

# ION CHANNEL-TARGET TOXICOLOGY

GUEST EDITORS: YONGHUA JI, JAN TYTGAT,  
MARIA ELENA DE LIMA, HONGZHUAN CHEN, AND YUN ZHANG





---

# **Ion Channel-Target Toxicology**

Journal of Toxicology

---

## **Ion Channel-Target Toxicology**

Guest Editors: Yonghua Ji, Jan Tytgat, Maria Elena de Lima,  
Hongzhuan Chen, and Yun Zhang



---

Copyright © 2012 Hindawi Publishing Corporation. All rights reserved.

This is a special issue published in "Journal of Toxicology." All articles are open access articles distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

## Editorial Board

Syed F. Ali, USA	Hisato Iwata, Japan	Gary H. Perdew, USA
Michael Aschner, USA	Margaret James, USA	Cinta Porte, Spain
Thomas Burbacher, USA	Yujian James Kang, USA	Robert H. Rice, USA
Steven J. Bursian, USA	Mary Kanz, USA	Rudy Richardson, USA
James Bus, USA	M. Firoze Khan, USA	Arleen Rifkind, USA
Lucio Guido Costa, USA	Paul Kostyniak, USA	JeanClare Seagrave, USA
Edmond Edmond Creppy, France	Robert Krieger, USA	James Sikarskie, USA
Kevin Crofton, USA	Kannan Krishnan, Canada	J. J. Stegeman, USA
Michael L. Cunningham, USA	B. L. Lasley, USA	Susan Sumner, USA
Anthony DeCaprio, USA	Pamela Lein, USA	Robert Tanguay, USA
David Doolittle, USA	Robert Luebke, USA	Kenneth Turteltaub, USA
Paul R. Ebert, Australia	Michael R. Moore, Australia	Brad Upham, USA
Laurence D. Fechter, USA	Jack Ng, Australia	William Valentine, USA
M. Teresa Colomina Fosch, Spain	P. J. O'Brien, Canada	J. T. Zelikoff, USA
M. Ian Gilmour, USA	Curtis Omiecinski, USA	Wei Zheng, USA
Bhaskar Gollapudi, USA	Orish Ebere Orisakwe, Nigeria	

## Contents

**Ion Channel-Target Toxicology**, Yonghua Ji and Maria Elena De Lima

Volume 2012, Article ID 501438, 2 pages

**Mining the Virgin Land of Neurotoxicology: A Novel Paradigm of Neurotoxic Peptides Action on Glycosylated Voltage-Gated Sodium Channels**, Zhirui Liu, Jie Tao, Pin Ye, and Yonghua Ji

Volume 2012, Article ID 843787, 6 pages

**A Lipocalin-Derived Peptide Modulating Fibroblasts and Extracellular Matrix Proteins**,

Linda Christian Carrijo-Carvalho, Durvanei A. Maria, Janaina S. Ventura, Kátia L. P. Morais, Robson L. Melo, Consuelo Junqueira Rodrigues, and Ana Marisa Chudzinski-Tavassi

Volume 2012, Article ID 325250, 8 pages

**Towards Therapeutic Applications of Arthropod Venom K<sup>+</sup>-Channel Blockers in CNS Neurologic Diseases Involving Memory Acquisition and Storage**, Christiano D. C. Gati, Márcia R. Mortari, and Elisabeth F. Schwartz

Volume 2012, Article ID 756358, 21 pages

**Potassium Channels Blockers from the Venom of *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus***,

Marie-France Martin-Eauclaire and Pierre E. Bougis

Volume 2012, Article ID 103608, 9 pages

**Nervous System of *Periplaneta americana* Cockroach as a Model in Toxinological Studies: A Short Historical and Actual View**, Maria Stankiewicz, Marcin Da;browski, and Maria Elena de Lima

Volume 2012, Article ID 143740, 11 pages

**Ion Channels and Zinc: Mechanisms of Neurotoxicity and Neurodegeneration**, Deborah R. Morris and Cathy W. Levenson

Volume 2012, Article ID 785647, 6 pages

## Editorial

# Ion Channel-Target Toxicology

**Yonghua Ji<sup>1</sup> and Maria Elena De Lima<sup>2</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> *Lab of Neuropharmacology and Neurotoxicology, Shanghai University, Nanchen Road 333, Shanghai 200444, China*

<sup>2</sup> *Departamento de Bioquímica e Imunologia, Instituto de Ciências Biológicas, Universidade Federal de Minas Gerais, Avenida Antônio Carlos 6627, 31.270 901 Belo Horizonte, MG, Brazil*

Correspondence should be addressed to Yonghua Ji, [yhji@staff.shu.edu.cn](mailto:yhji@staff.shu.edu.cn)

Received 9 July 2012; Accepted 9 July 2012

Copyright © 2012 Y. Ji and M. E. De Lima. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

The saying “use poison as an antidote to poison” has long been considered the spirit of traditional Chinese medicine and herbalism since Ming Dynasty and has indicated the medical values of toxins arising from venomous animals, plants, microbes, or synthetic chemicals. A well-known physician Sir P. M. Latham (1789–1875) once defined the relationship between poisons and medicines as “oftentimes the same substances given with different intents”, what highlighted the double-edged sword nature of toxins when applied with different doses.

In view of the great potential of toxins as medicines and drug precursors, a stormy survey and pursuit has been implemented within pharmaceutical industry and research centers in a worldwide range. A classical example comes from the studies of a Brazilian scientist, Dr. Sergio Ferreira, who discovered, in the 1960s, bradykinin potentiating peptides (BPPs), extracted from the venom of the Brazilian viper *Bothrops jararaca*. These peptides were later shown to be able to decrease arterial pressure. This study was very important for the development of an analogue molecule, by Squibb Laboratory, called Captopril, one of the most successful examples of blockbuster drugs, used as an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEi), currently used in the treatment of hypertension, generating more than 8 billion dollars a year.

Nowadays, a representative instance comes from the successfully commercialized toxin product “Ziconotide,” developed by Eli Lilly Incorporated (USA), from the venom of *Conus*. On the other side, IZMed Incorporated, a worldwide renowned market research firm specialized in the Chinese pharmaceutical industry, once forecasted that the Chinese preclinical and toxicology outsourcing industry would likely grow in a compound annual growth rate of 27% in five years

after 2010 and its market value would likely reach more than \$760 million by 2015.

Despite the rapid growth and worldwide attention to toxin R&D industries, it has to be well recognized that the productivity of discovering a new medicine from toxins is still little efficient in the global biopharmaceutical industry. The hindrances toward toxin-drug transformation may include but not be limited to (1) overall costs of drug development; (2) elimination of nondevelopable drug candidates; (3) extensive toxicology and safety pharmacology researches for any drug candidates. Among them, one of the major challenges of toxicity evaluation and integrated efficacy may be the targets of toxins in the human body.

Up to now, it has been well documented that ion channels are specific targets for numerous toxins. Neurotoxins secreted by various venomous species have played critical roles in understanding the physiological contributions of ion channels to the neuronal network as well as in probing and correlating ion channel structure and function. Ion channel-targeted toxins have been validated as promising drug candidates or leading molecules for the treatment of various neuronal syndromes.

All the above considerations led us to gather the current state of the art on natural toxins or toxic compounds targeted to ion channels with possible applications in health care and biotechnology.

This special issue provides a timely focus on the recent progress in our understanding of the mechanisms of toxins specially involved in neuronal dysfunctions. Geographically dispersed excellent specialists in this area from China, Brazil, USA, and France contributed to this special issue with 6 papers: 5 reviews and 1 full research article, covering from

structure-function relationship to the neurological diseases involved with ion channel-targeted toxins, including the study of novel animal models. Although this special issue is a first attempt in the field of ion channel-targeted toxicology, a subsequent and more expanded issue with complementary topics shall be released in the near future.

The development in the field of toxinology owes much to the use of various nervous preparations obtained from various animal models. Among them, the biophysical principles of the nervous system function in insects have been shown to be the same as in mammals. In both groups of animals, similar neurotransmitters can be found, although their distribution varies. M. Stankiewicz et al. present the role of the nervous system of the cockroach *Periplaneta americana* as a well-addressed preparation in the development of toxinological studies. In addition, they provide a systematic introduction to electrophysiological methods to be applied therewith, which allow us to perform pharmacological tests in various levels of the nervous system organization. They also reconsider the definite statement concerning the mode of action of any toxin when carrying out experiments under different conditions.

Considered fundamental in many physiological processes,  $K^+$ -channels are recognized as potential therapeutic targets in the treatment of several central nervous system diseases. C. D. C. Gati et al. provide an overview of CNS  $K^+$ -channels involved in memory acquisition and storage and evaluate the use of highly selective  $K^+$ -channel blockers derived from arthropod venoms as potential therapeutic agents for CNS diseases involving learning and memory mechanisms. Particularly, M.-F. Martin-Eauclaire and P. E. Bougis summarized recent work on the molecular mechanism of toxin-channel interactions of several high-affinity blockers selective to various  $K^+$  channels ( $SK_{Ca}$ ,  $K_v4.x$ , and  $K_v1.x$   $K^+$  channel families), from the venom of the Moroccan scorpion *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus*, which may provide new insights into the targets and the mode of action of KTxs.

Even though the studies of ion channel structure-function relationship have always been the most pursued spots, the posttranslational modification processes, such as glycosylation, phosphorylation, and alternative splicing associated with channel functions, have also been investigated. Z. Liu et al. proposed that sodium channel-specific neurotoxic toxins, a family of long-chain polypeptides originating from venomous animals, potentially share binding sites adjacent to glycosylated regions of VGSCs (voltage gated sodium channels). Thus, an interaction between toxins and glycosylated VGSCs might hopefully join the campaign to approach the role of glycosylation in modulating VGSC-involved neuronal network activity.

Apart from voltage-gated ion channels, ionotropic glutamate receptors classified as ligand-gated ion channels, such as NMDA, AMPA, and kainate receptors, are also thought to mediate much of the excitatory neurotransmission in the brain. D. R. Morris and C. W. Levenson discussed the role of the excitotoxic influx and zinc accumulation, the mechanisms responsible for its cytotoxicity, and a number of disorders of the central nervous system linked to these

neuronal ion channels and zinc toxicity. The in-depth researches in toxic chemicals targeted on neuronal receptors may hopefully help to develop strategies to block zinc-mediated damage and prevent undesirable outcomes.

A very interesting study was developed by L. C. Carrijo-Carvalho et al., who discovered a peptide believed to be involved in development, regeneration, and pathological processes. It is abundant in the venom of the caterpillar *Lonomia obliqua*. Notably, this research evaluated the effects of this peptide based on lipocalin motif in human fibroblasts in morphogenesis and tissue homeostasis. This was the first paper of lipocalins modulating fibroblasts and ECM proteins.

We extremely appreciated the great contributions of the researchers who have warmly participated in this special issue as writers or reviewers. It is our best wish that the special issue presented here incites new studies that provide a better understanding of the mechanisms underlying ion channel-targeted toxicology, eventually leading to more effective treatments with toxin-evoked epidemiology or other health care concerns.

Yonghua Ji  
Maria Elena De Lima



## Review Article

# Mining the Virgin Land of Neurotoxicology: A Novel Paradigm of Neurotoxic Peptides Action on Glycosylated Voltage-Gated Sodium Channels

Zhirui Liu, Jie Tao, Pin Ye, and Yonghua Ji

Laboratory of Neuropharmacology and Neurotoxicology, Shanghai University, Nanchen Road 333, Shanghai 200444, China

Correspondence should be addressed to Yonghua Ji, yhj@staff.shu.edu.cn

Received 15 February 2012; Revised 17 April 2012; Accepted 24 May 2012

Academic Editor: Maria Elena de Lima

Copyright © 2012 Zhirui Liu et al. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Voltage-gated sodium channels (VGSCs) are important membrane protein carrying on the molecular basis for action potentials (AP) in neuronal firings. Even though the structure-function studies were the most pursued spots, the posttranslation modification processes, such as glycosylation, phosphorylation, and alternative splicing associating with channel functions captured less eyesights. The accumulative research suggested an interaction between the sialic acids chains and ion-permeable pores, giving rise to subtle but significant impacts on channel gating. Sodium channel-specific neurotoxic toxins, a family of long-chain polypeptides originated from venomous animals, are found to potentially share the binding sites adjacent to glycosylated region on VGSCs. Thus, an interaction between toxin and glycosylated VGSC might hopefully join the campaign to approach the role of glycosylation in modulating VGSCs-involved neuronal network activity. This paper will cover the state-of-the-art advances of researches on glycosylation-mediated VGSCs function and the possible underlying mechanisms of interactions between toxin and glycosylated VGSCs, which may therefore, fulfill the knowledge in identifying the pharmacological targets and therapeutic values of VGSCs.

## 1. Introduction

In neurons and most excitable cells, multiform action potentials driven by depolarizing neuronal firing are considered to be accounted by spatiotemporal activation and integral performances of tissue-specific VGSCs [1]. Generally, VGSCs consist of an  $\alpha$  subunit (260 kDa) and several auxiliary  $\beta$  subunits ( $\beta 1$ – $\beta 4$ , 33–38 kDa). The  $\alpha$  subunit is well organized in four homologous domains (DI–DIV) which contain six transmembrane segments each (S1–S6). The hairpin-like loop between S5 and S6 segments region is functioned as ion-permeable pore [2]. Notably, both  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  subunits are highly glycosylated cross-membrane proteins [3–7] (Figure 1).

The most common form of glycosylation sites on VGSCs protein is mainly composed by N-linked sialic acids, [8]. Estimation indicates that 15%–40% of the total VGSC  $\alpha$  subunit molecular weight is carbohydrate [6, 7, 9]. Approximately 40%–45% of the added carbohydrate residues are sialic acid moieties, resulting in the addition of an estimated 100 sialic acid residues per subunit molecule [6, 9]. Up to now,

through bioinformatics prediction, there have been found tens of potential extracellular glycosylation sites located mainly within the pore region lining between DI S5–S6 in  $\alpha$  subunit of VGSCs, less of which, however, have been functionally characterized [5, 10, 11]. Far less than  $\alpha$  subunit, only three of the four N-linked glycosylation sites present in the N terminus of  $\beta$  subunits are thought to be glycosylated in the mature protein [5, 12].

Glycosylation has long been known to participate in regulation of functional expression of channels, such as folding, trafficking, and membrane-insert localization, but also influence electrophysiological properties [13–16]. Inhibition of N-linked glycosylation altered the voltage dependence of channel gating of  $K_v1.1$  and  $K_vLQT/minK$  (IsK) and the open probability of the renal outer medullary  $K^+$  channel ROMK1 (inward rectifier  $K^+$  channel), as well as the pH sensitivity of  $K_vLQT/minK$  channels [17, 18]. In addition, N-linked glycosylation was found to be capable of increasing the stability of Shaker potassium channels proteins in trafficking from the endoplasmic reticulum to the Golgi [13, 15]. Comparably, the information of glycosylation on modulating

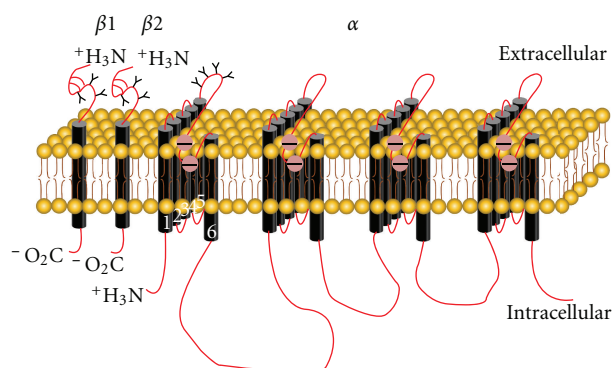


FIGURE 1: Structure and localization of glycosylation sites of VGSC. The primary structures of the subunits of the voltage-gated ion channels are illustrated as transmembrane-folding diagrams. Cylinders represent probable  $\alpha$ -helical segments. Bold lines in red represent the polypeptide chains of each subunit, with length approximately proportional to the number of amino acid residues in the brain sodium channel subtypes. The extracellular domains of the  $\beta 1$  and  $\beta 2$  subunits are shown as immunoglobulin-like folds. Sites of probable N-linked glycosylation; open circle with “—”, amino residues that form the ion selectivity filter and tetrodotoxin binding site.

VGSCs function was less approached. The current knowledge about the modulation of glycosylation on VGSCs is mainly focused on reducing the voltage-dependent gating sensitivity, and thereby lowering the AP threshold at neuronal network level [19–21]. But questions like (1) how does glycosylation control the local static milieu on the surface of VGSCs protein which is attributed to the state of cell membrane? (2) what about the subtype-specific modulation of glycosylation on VGSCs? (3) does each glycosylation site modulate equally or synergically on the VGSCs gating? still appear as difficult tasks to work out.

To address the above problems, one may resort to segment-swap chimera construction or glycosylation-deficient cells to reduce the level of glycosylation [10, 22]. However, such methods may still bring about the unexpected artificial factors. More importantly, the complexity of extracellular environment and structure of channel protein itself may also disturb the reliability. Therefore, one prospective and efficient way is to find out the subtype-specific glycosylation modulators.

Natural toxic polypeptides originated from various venomous animals are deemed to be specifically targeting on VGSCs by either lowering the threshold for activation or delaying the inactivation process [23–26]. To date, there have been found six receptor sites of these toxins on VGSCs, some of which are even residing in the overlapped region of glycosylated sites on VGSCs [23, 26–28]. Meanwhile, the pharmacological studies have demonstrated that the binding of these toxins and their targets is highly subtype specific [26, 27, 29]. Thus, they are hopefully utilized as efficient tools to more precisely uncover the role of glycosylation on VGSCs gating and the overall performances on channel pathology in clinical therapy.

## 2. Mechanism of Glycosylation to the Voltage Dependence of VGSCs Gating

A general understanding about the physiological function of glycosylation on VGSCs is to control the voltage sensitivity in a channel through the number of sialic acids residing on [30]. Once these sialic acids are removed by deglycosylated reagents, such as tunicamycin and neuraminidase, the voltage-dependent activation will shift to a more depolarized direction and thereby raising the threshold for AP generation [7, 22]. Currently, one commonly accepted notion is that it was negative charges brought about by a significant content of sialic acid residues on the glycosylation sites of the extracellular region that caused the hyperpolarized voltage dependence of gating [22]. However, some reports have suggested that various  $\text{Na}_v\alpha$  subunits are differently glycosylated/sialylated even expressed in the same cell line [19]. This difference in  $\alpha$  subunit sialylation directly and differently alters channel gating [10]. Here, two mechanisms describing the differential modulation of glycosylation on VGSCs gating are discussed below.

**2.1. “Subtype-Specific” Mechanism.** It is well known that VGSCs have nine tissue or developmentally distinct subtypes, named as  $\text{Na}_v1.1$  to  $\text{Na}_v1.9$ , each of which has been found to be responsible for functionally diverse electric activities within the specific region they are expressed [31]. Recent researches have indicated that different VGSC subtypes have differential responses to the glycosylation.

Deglycosylated  $\text{Na}_v1.4$  could result in a depolarizing shift in both voltage-dependent activation and inactivation. Comparatively, deglycosylated  $\text{Na}_v1.5$  could lead to a depolarized voltage-dependent activation but not inactivation [20, 21]. By contrast, deglycosylation could only shift the midpoint of steady-state inactivation of  $\text{Na}_v1.9$  in adult small DRG neurons to more depolarized potentials [20]. Gating of  $\text{Na}_v1.2$  and  $\text{Na}_v1.7$  could not be significantly affected by deglycosylation [32]. Our recent work found that the steady-state activation curve of deglycosylated  $\text{Na}_v1.3$  was depolarized to a more positive direction, while inactivation curve was negatively shifted [33]. Thus far, glycosylation is capable of modulating VGSCs gating to various extents.

There was a report which attributed such differential modulation of glycosylation to distinct extent of glycosylation of each VGSC subtype. Immunoblot data suggested that  $\text{Na}_v1.4$  is more glycosylated than  $\text{Na}_v1.5$  [10]. As a matter of fact,  $\text{Na}_v1.1$ – $\text{Na}_v1.4$ , are heavily glycosylated (about 15–30%), whilst  $\text{Na}_v1.5$  and  $\text{Na}_v1.9$  are barely glycosylated (~5%) [20]. Accordingly, it was indicated that  $\text{Na}_v1.4$  voltage-dependent gating parameters are significantly and essentially uniformly altered by sialic acid than that of  $\text{Na}_v1.5$ . For the reason that the external surface of one VGSC  $\alpha$ -subunit was estimated to have about 110–130 negative charges composed by the sialic acids (amount to about 40% of total carbohydrate in VGSC) [32], it is likely that sialic acid alters the electric field sensed by the gating mechanism of the channel [10]. That is, a higher level of glycosylation

in VGSC may lead to more depolarized shift in voltage-dependent gating when deglycosylated. As a consequence, the deglycosylated VGSCs may require larger depolarizing stimulus to activate.

**2.2. “Cell-Specific” Mechanism.** One seemingly contradictory notion against the “subtype-specific” mechanism was that it was because of certain internal environment of different cells types which differentially produce sialylated proteins leading to a spectrum of  $\text{Na}_v$  functional sialic acid levels that directly modulate channel gating. Hence, such mechanism was termed as “cell specific” [19, 32].

“Cell-specific” may arise from two compensated factors. One is that the glycosylation extent in certain VGSC protein may vary throughout the developmental stages: for example,  $\text{Na}^+$  currents in adult rat cortical and dorsal root ganglion neurons are less sensitive to sialic acid than  $\text{Na}^+$  currents from neonatal neurons [20, 34]. Adult ventricular myocyte VGSCs were more heavily sialylated and gated at more hyperpolarized potentials than they were in neonate ventricular myocyte VGSCs. One possible explanation for this increased sialylation would be a chronic increase in sialyltransferase activity in the developing ventricles [19].

Another aspect resulting in differential glycosylation came from the tissue- or cell-type-specific proteins that modify the number of sialic acids on the surface of VGSCs. One recent work have suggested that the modulation of glycosylation may display a rather complex profile with the combinatorial link with VGSC  $\beta$ -subunit: for example, when  $\beta 1$  subunit was coexpressed with  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$ ,  $\text{Na}_v 1.4$ ,  $\text{Na}_v 1.5$ , and  $\text{Na}_v 1.7$ , the extent of hyperpolarized shift in voltage-dependent activation has the following order:  $\text{Na}_v 1.7 > \text{Na}_v 1.5 > \text{Na}_v 1.2 > \text{Na}_v 1.4$ , where  $\text{Na}_v 1.4$  was less modulated by  $\beta 1$  subunit, which indicated an essentially saturating level of functional sialic acids. On the contrary,  $\text{Na}_v 1.7$  alone contain the least functional sialic acids in DIS5-S6, and therefore the levels of functional sialic acids increase, causing the most remarkably hyperpolarization in voltage-dependent activation when coexpressed with  $\beta 1$  subunit [32].

### 3. Novel Paradigm of Interaction between VGSCs and Neurotoxic Peptides

Since the distinct binding affinity with VGSCs, natural toxins such as that from marine animals (saxitoxin, sea anemone) and arthropods (scorpion toxins, spider toxins) have long been applied to investigate the structure-function relationship of VGSCs and regarded as pharmacological templates for developing therapeutic leads [23–26, 35].

However, there have been paradoxes seen in contact cells and in vitro studies on VGSCs. For instance, BmK I, a site-3-specific modulator of VGSCs from scorpion *Buthus martensii* Karsch (BmK) was capable to prevent the inactivation of  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$  and produce persistent current, which may account for BmK I-induced epileptiform responses in rats [36–39]. However, the specific binding of BmK I to the VGSCs in rat brain synaptosomes (mainly  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$ ) was undetectable [40]. Although the contradictory modulation of BmK I between

VGSCs-rich synaptosomes and heterologously expressed  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$  may somewhat attribute to lack of BmK I-sensitive VGSCs [37], the complex intracellular enzymatic context of synaptosomes stimulated us to speculate the involvement of glycosylation on modulating sensitivity of VGSCs to BmK I.

In our recent researches, it was found that BmK I could distinctively modulate glycosylated/deglycosylated  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$  expressed in oocytes. The voltage dependent activation of deglycosylated  $\text{Na}_v 1.2$  was significantly shifted to more negative direction by BmK I, contrary to the little effects on the glycosylated ones. This research indicated that the glycosylated sites on VGSCs may act as umbrellas to shield the interaction sites of VGSCs with BmK I, and if biochemically removed, may facilitate the binding of BmK I to the receptor sites (Figure 2).

Coincidentally, as a receptor site-3-specific modulator, BmK I has been suggested to be capable of binding to the region where glycosylation sites also reside [37, 40]. It has been indicated that the extracellular loops between transmembrane segments S5 and S6 in domain I of the  $\alpha$ -subunit are involved in the formation of receptor site 3 [28]. In addition, several antibodies that recognize the extracellular loops between transmembrane S5 and S6 in domains I and IV prevent  $\alpha$ -scorpion toxin binding to receptor site 3, suggesting involvement of amino acid residues in these locations [41]. All these clues may potentially support the notion that there exists interaction between glycosylation sites and BmK I, by which the binding affinities of BmK I to VGSCs may be altered if the channel was decosylated.

Similar phenomenon can also be referred to the mode of actions of sulfamethoxazole (SMX) on HERG channel accompanying with a mutant subunit MiRP1 (T8A). Under normal conditions, the carbohydrates were attached to shield the variable receptor and thus impairing the SMX binding. Conversely, in channels formed with MiRP1 T8A mutants that are deficient in glycosylated sites by mutation, SMX accessibility to the receptor is facilitated by the absence of the oligosaccharide groups [42].

Likewise, Catterall et al. in 1987 have concluded the possible mechanism to explain the lack of binding of saxitoxin, one VGSCs-specific blocker, to the glycosylated VGSCs: the negative surface charges on the glycosylated sodium channel are expected to increase the local concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  near the extracellular opening of its transmembrane pore and to increase the local concentration of a cationic ligand like saxitoxin near its receptor site. The lack of effect of inhibition of sialylation with castanospermine on saxitoxin binding indicates that the saxitoxin receptor site is located distance from the negative surface charges contributed by sialic acid residues or is insulated from their effects by the protein structure [7].

### 4. Perspectives

Several lines of evidence suggest that regulation of the level of sialylation is a powerful mechanism to control the surface charge of channels as well as neuronal channel pathology [27, 43–45]: for example, long QT syndrome

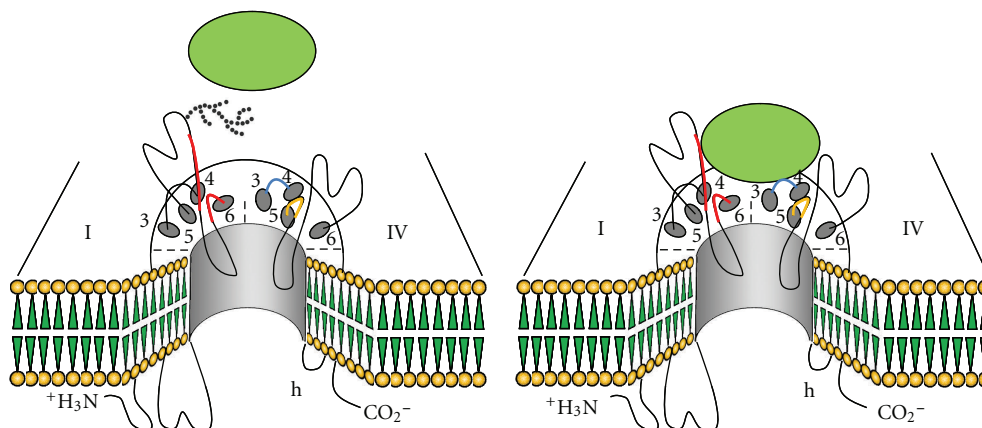


FIGURE 2: Hypothesis on deglycosylation-created modulation of scorpion toxins to VGSCs. For glycosylated VGSC, the sialic carbohydrates (dotted branch) shield the binding site and thus prevent toxin binding (left). If the sialic carbohydrates are deleted, the toxin accessibility to the binding site is facilitated because of the absence of the oligosaccharide groups and consequently modulate the gating of VGSCs (right).

(LQT, a cardiac disease relate to HERG) is also caused by the mutation of glycosylated sites in HERG [45]. It was reported that glycosylation is essential for the biosynthesis and the maintenance of functional VGSCs in fibroblastoma cells [46]. Additionally, one of main pathogenesis resulting in sinus arrhythmia is insufficient level of glycosylation in cardiac VGSCs [47]. Moreover, some studies showed that the chronic pain is related to the increase of glycosylation in neuron membrane in nerve injury sites [48]. Finally, an increase in sialic acid-negative surface charge resulting in reduced AP threshold and increased excitability could be one of the important factors of the pathogenesis of epilepsy associated with these inherited disorders [22].

The researches on detecting the modulation of glycosylation on VGSCs function are subjected to two major challenges. (1) There still lack of specific tools to precisely and efficiently modify the level of glycosylation on VGSCs, which may result in ambiguous observations in the real studies. Maybe some bioinformatics predictions could provide the auxiliary clues to compensate this problem. However, it remains to be more cautious in treating the computer-assisted data even until some site-directed evidence has been conducted. (2) The static alteration in glycosylation sites can restructure the receptor sites in VGSCs where some potential specific drugs may bind with. Thus, it is a critical task to discriminate the possible disturbance of glycosylation when treating with some seemly inefficient drugs targeting on VGSCs.

As sodium channel-specific modulators and neurotoxins have great potentials to probe the intriguing subtle structural variations in VGSCs found across different tissues and species. However, the pharmacological sensitivity of VGSCs toward toxins, seen in Section 3, may be subject to differential modulation due to the glycosylation of VGSC protein itself, leading to the difficulties in observing the actual interactions. Hence, a broader view of how neurotoxins modulate neuronal activities and thereby valuable information regarding to VGSCs as therapeutic targets could be obtained until more precise details about the role of glycosylation in determining toxin-channel interaction be deduced.

## Acknowledgments

This study was supported by the National Basic Research Program of China (2010CB529806), partially by Grants from National Natural Science Foundation of China (31171064), Key Research Program of Science and Technology Commissions of Shanghai Municipality (11JC1404300), and Leading Academic Discipline Project of Shanghai Municipal Education Commission (J50108).

## References

- [1] W. A. Catterall, "Structure and function of voltage-gated ion channels," *Annual Review of Biochemistry*, vol. 64, pp. 493–531, 1995.
- [2] A. L. Goldin, "Evolution of voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 205, no. 5, pp. 575–584, 2002.
- [3] S. A. Cohen and L. K. Levitt, "Partial characterization of the rH1 sodium channel protein from rat heart using subtype-specific antibodies," *Circulation Research*, vol. 73, no. 4, pp. 735–742, 1993.
- [4] D. Gordon, D. Merrick, D. A. Wollner, and W. A. Catterall, "Biochemical properties of sodium channels in a wide range of excitable tissues studied with site-directed antibodies," *Biochemistry*, vol. 27, no. 18, pp. 7032–7038, 1988.
- [5] D. J. Messner and W. A. Catterall, "The sodium channel from rat brain. Separation and characterization of subunits," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 260, no. 19, pp. 10597–10604, 1985.
- [6] R. H. Roberts and R. L. Barchi, "The voltage-sensitive sodium channel from rabbit skeletal muscle. Chemical characterization of subunits," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 262, no. 5, pp. 2298–2303, 1987.
- [7] J. W. Schmidt and W. A. Catterall, "Palmitoylation, sulfation, and glycosylation of the alpha subunit of the sodium channel. Role of post-translational modifications in channel assembly," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 262, no. 28, pp. 13713–13723, 1987.
- [8] R. G. Spiro, "Glycoproteins," *Advances in Protein Chemistry*, vol. 27, pp. 349–467, 1973.
- [9] J. A. Miller, W. S. Agnew, and S. R. Levinson, "Principal glycopeptide of the tetrodotoxin/saxitoxin binding protein



- from *Electrophorus electricus*: isolation and partial chemical and physical characterization," *Biochemistry*, vol. 22, no. 2, pp. 462–470, 1983.
- [10] E. S. Bennett, "Isoform-specific effects of sialic acid on voltage-dependent  $\text{Na}^+$  channel gating: functional sialic acids are localized to the S5-S6 loop of domain I," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 538, no. 3, pp. 675–690, 2002.
- [11] S. A. Cohen and R. L. Barchi, "Glycoprotein characteristics of the sodium channel saxitoxin-binding component from mammalian sarcolemma," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 645, no. 2, pp. 253–261, 1981.
- [12] L. L. Isom, K. S. De Jongh, D. E. Patton et al., "Primary structure and functional expression of the  $\beta 1$  subunit of the rat brain sodium channel," *Science*, vol. 256, no. 5058, pp. 839–842, 1992.
- [13] N. F. de Souza and S. M. Simon, "Glycosylation affects the rate of traffic of the shaker potassium channel through the secretory pathway," *Biochemistry*, vol. 41, no. 38, pp. 11351–11361, 2002.
- [14] Q. Gong, C. L. Anderson, C. T. January, and Z. Zhou, "Role of glycosylation in cell surface expression and stability of HERG potassium channels," *American Journal of Physiology*, vol. 283, no. 1, pp. H77–H84, 2002.
- [15] R. Khanna, M. P. Myers, M. Lainé, and D. M. Papazian, "Glycosylation increases potassium channel stability and surface expression in mammalian cells," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 36, pp. 34028–34034, 2001.
- [16] K. Petrecca, R. Atanasiu, A. Akhavan, and A. Shrier, "N-linked glycosylation sites determine HERG: channel surface membrane expression," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 515, pp. 41–48, 1999.
- [17] L. C. Freeman, J. J. Lippold, and K. E. Mitchell, "Glycosylation influences gating and pH sensitivity of  $\text{I}(\text{sK})$ ," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 177, no. 1, pp. 65–79, 2000.
- [18] R. A. Schwalbe, Z. Wang, B. A. Wible, and A. M. Brown, "Potassium channel structure and function as reported by a single glycosylation sequon," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 270, no. 25, pp. 15336–15340, 1995.
- [19] P. J. Stocker and E. S. Bennett, "Differential sialylation modulates voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channel gating throughout the developing myocardium," *Journal of General Physiology*, vol. 127, no. 3, pp. 253–265, 2006.
- [20] L. Tyrrell, M. Renganathan, S. D. Dib-Hajj, and S. G. Waxman, "Glycosylation alters steady-state inactivation of sodium channel  $\text{Nav}1.9/\text{NaN}$  in dorsal root ganglion neurons and is developmentally regulated," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 21, no. 24, pp. 9629–9637, 2001.
- [21] Y. Zhang, H. A. Hartmann, and J. Satin, "Glycosylation influences voltage-dependent gating of cardiac and skeletal muscle sodium channels," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 171, no. 3, pp. 195–207, 1999.
- [22] D. Isaev, E. Isaeva, T. Shatskih et al., "Role of extracellular sialic acid in regulation of neuronal and network excitability in the rat hippocampus," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 27, no. 43, pp. 11587–11594, 2007.
- [23] S. Cestele and W. A. Catterall, "Molecular mechanisms of neurotoxin action on voltage-gated sodium channels," *Biochimie*, vol. 82, no. 9–10, pp. 883–892, 2000.
- [24] M. E. De Lima, S. G. Figueiredo, A. M. C. Pimenta et al., "Peptides of arachnid venoms with insecticidal activity targeting sodium channels," *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology C*, vol. 146, no. 1–2, pp. 264–279, 2007.
- [25] C. Goudet, C. W. Chi, and J. Tytgat, "An overview of toxins and genes from the venom of the Asian scorpion *Buthus martensi* Karsch," *Toxicon*, vol. 40, no. 9, pp. 1239–1258, 2002.
- [26] X. P. Zuo and Y. H. Ji, "Molecular mechanism of scorpion neurotoxins acting on sodium channels: insight into their diverse selectivity," *Molecular Neurobiology*, vol. 30, no. 3, pp. 265–278, 2004.
- [27] M. Stevens, S. Peigneur, and J. Tytgat, "Neurotoxins and their binding areas on voltage-gated sodium channels," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*, vol. 2, article 71, 2011.
- [28] F. J. Tejedor and W. A. Catterall, "Site of covalent attachment of  $\alpha$ -scorpion toxin derivatives in domain I of the sodium channel  $\alpha$  subunit," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 85, no. 22, pp. 8742–8746, 1988.
- [29] Z. R. Liu, P. Ye, and Y. H. Ji, "Exploring the obscure profiles of pharmacological binding sites on voltage-gated sodium channels by BmK neurotoxins," *Protein Cell*, vol. 2, pp. 437–444, 2011.
- [30] E. Bennett, M. S. Urcan, S. S. Tinkle, A. G. Koszowski, and S. R. Levinson, "Contribution of sialic acid to the voltage dependence of sodium channel gating: a possible electrostatic mechanism," *Journal of General Physiology*, vol. 109, no. 3, pp. 327–343, 1997.
- [31] W. A. Catterall, "From ionic currents to molecular mechanisms: the structure and function of voltage-gated sodium channels," *Neuron*, vol. 26, no. 1, pp. 13–25, 2000.
- [32] D. Johnson, M. L. Montpetit, P. J. Stocker, and E. S. Bennett, "The sialic acid component of the  $\beta 1$  subunit modulates voltage-gated sodium channel function," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 279, no. 43, pp. 44303–44310, 2004.
- [33] Q. Xu, H. W. Cheng, H. Q. He et al., "Deglycosylation altered the gating properties of  $\text{rNav}1.3$ : glycosylation/deglycosylation homeostasis probably complicates the functional regulation of voltage-gated sodium channel," *Neuroscience Bulletin*, vol. 24, no. 5, pp. 283–287, 2008.
- [34] C. Zona, F. Eusebi, and R. Miledi, "Glycosylation is required for maintenance of functional voltage-activated channels in growing neocortical neurons of the rat," *Proceedings of the Royal Society B*, vol. 239, no. 1295, pp. 119–127, 1990.
- [35] J. C. Rogers, Y. Qu, T. N. Tanada, T. Scheuer, and W. A. Catterall, "Molecular determinants of high affinity binding of  $\alpha$ -scorpion toxin and sea anemone toxin in the S3-S4 extracellular loop in domain IV of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel  $\alpha$  subunit," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 271, no. 27, pp. 15950–15962, 1996.
- [36] Z. T. Bai, R. Zhao, X. Y. Zhang, J. Chen, T. Liu, and Y. H. Ji, "The epileptic seizures induced by BmK I, a modulator of sodium channels," *Experimental Neurology*, vol. 197, no. 1, pp. 167–176, 2006.
- [37] H. He, Z. Liu, B. Dong, J. Zhou, H. Zhu, and Y. Ji, "Molecular determination of selectivity of the site 3 modulator (BmK I) to sodium channels in the CNS: a clue to the importance of  $\text{Nav}1.6$  in BmK I-induced neuronal hyperexcitability," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 431, no. 2, pp. 289–298, 2010.
- [38] Y. H. Ji, P. Mansuelle, S. Terakawa et al., "Two neurotoxins (BMK I and BMK II) from the venom of the scorpion *Buthus martensi* Karsch: purification, amino acid sequences and assessment of specific activity," *Toxicon*, vol. 34, no. 9, pp. 987–1001, 1996.
- [39] M. Tan, M. M. Zhu, Y. Liu, H. W. Cheng, and Y. H. Ji, "Effects of BmK AS on  $\text{Nav}1.2$  expressed in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes," *Cell Biology and Toxicology*, vol. 24, no. 2, pp. 143–149, 2008.

- [40] Y. J. Li and Y. H. Ji, "Binding characteristics of BmK I, an  $\alpha$ -like scorpion neurotoxic polypeptide, on cockroach nerve cord synaptosomes," *Journal of Peptide Research*, vol. 56, no. 4, pp. 195–200, 2000.
- [41] W. J. Thomsen and W. A. Catterall, "Localization of the receptor site for  $\alpha$ -scorpion toxins by antibody mapping: implications for sodium channel topology," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 86, no. 24, pp. 10161–10165, 1989.
- [42] K. H. Park, S. M. Kwok, C. Sharon, R. Berga, and F. Sesti, "N-glycosylation-dependent block is a novel mechanism for drug-induced cardiac arrhythmia," *The FASEB Journal*, vol. 17, no. 15, pp. 2308–2309, 2003.
- [43] A. Akhavan, "N- and O-linked glycosylation coordinate cell-surface localization of a cardiac potassium channel," *The Journal of Physiology*, vol. 589, pp. 4647–4648, 2011.
- [44] M. K. Hall, T. A. Cartwright, C. M. Fleming, and R. A. Schwalbe, "Importance of glycosylation on function of a potassium channel in neuroblastoma cells," *PLoS ONE*, vol. 6, no. 4, Article ID e19317, 2011.
- [45] C. A. Satler, M. R. Vesely, P. Duggal, G. S. Ginsburg, and A. H. Beggs, "Multiple different missense mutations in the pore region of HERG in patients with long QT syndrome," *Human Genetics*, vol. 102, no. 3, pp. 265–272, 1998.
- [46] A. Pabon, K. W. Chan, J. L. Sui, X. Wu, D. E. Logothetis, and W. B. Thornhill, "Glycosylation of GIRK1 at Asn119 and ROMK1 at Asn117 has different consequences in potassium channel function," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 275, no. 39, pp. 30677–30682, 2000.
- [47] C. A. Ufret-Vincenty, D. J. Baro, W. J. Lederer, H. A. Rockman, L. E. Quiñones, and L. F. Santana, "Role of sodium channel deglycosylation in the genesis of cardiac arrhythmias in heart failure," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 30, pp. 28197–28203, 2001.
- [48] X. L. Zhang, X. Q. Peng, Y. L. Jing, W. R. Xie, and Y. K. Xie, "Sialic acid contributes to generation of ectopic spontaneous discharges in rats with neuropathic pain," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 346, no. 1-2, pp. 65–68, 2003.

## Research Article

# A Lipocalin-Derived Peptide Modulating Fibroblasts and Extracellular Matrix Proteins

Linda Christian Carrijo-Carvalho,<sup>1</sup> Durvanei A. Maria,<sup>1</sup>  
Janaina S. Ventura,<sup>1</sup> Kátia L. P. Moraes,<sup>1</sup> Robson L. Melo,<sup>2</sup>  
Consuelo Junqueira Rodrigues,<sup>3</sup> and Ana Marisa Chudzinski-Tavassi<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Laboratory of Biochemistry and Biophysics, Butantan Institute, Avenida Vital Brasil 1500, 05503-900 São Paulo, SP, Brazil

<sup>2</sup> Center for Applied Toxinology, Butantan Institute, 05503-900 São Paulo, SP, Brazil

<sup>3</sup> Department of Orthopedics and Traumatology, Faculty of Medicine, University of São Paulo, 01246-903 São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Correspondence should be addressed to Ana Marisa Chudzinski-Tavassi, amchudzinski@butantan.gov.br

Received 3 January 2012; Revised 23 February 2012; Accepted 15 April 2012

Academic Editor: Yonghua Ji

Copyright © 2012 Linda Christian Carrijo-Carvalho et al. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Lipocalin family members have been implicated in development, regeneration, and pathological processes, but their roles are unclear. Interestingly, these proteins are found abundant in the venom of the *Lonomia obliqua* caterpillar. Lipocalins are  $\beta$ -barrel proteins, which have three conserved motifs in their amino acid sequence. One of these motifs was shown to be a sequence signature involved in cell modulation. The aim of this study is to investigate the effects of a synthetic peptide comprising the lipocalin sequence motif in fibroblasts. This peptide suppressed caspase 3 activity and upregulated Bcl-2 and Ki-67, but did not interfere with GPCR calcium mobilization. Fibroblast responses also involved increased expression of proinflammatory mediators. Increase of extracellular matrix proteins, such as collagen, fibronectin, and tenascin, was observed. Increase in collagen content was also observed in vivo. Results indicate that modulation effects displayed by lipocalins through this sequence motif involve cell survival, extracellular matrix remodeling, and cytokine signaling. Such effects can be related to the lipocalin roles in disease, development, and tissue repair.

## 1. Introduction

Development and regeneration are processes driven by dynamic regulation of extracellular matrix (ECM). ECM is continuously exposed to physical and chemical injuries, and its composing proteins are continuously synthesized and secreted by fibroblasts, which play a central role in regulation of tissue homeostasis. Thus, in young and healthy tissue there is a balance between ECM deposition and degradation, in a well-organized and regulated process [1, 2].

Dysfunctions in deposition and remodeling of ECM proteins hinder normal tissue repair and are observed in several pathologies, such as chronic wound [3], sclerosis and other fibrotic diseases [4, 5], tendinopathy [6], diabetes [7], renal disease [8], pulmonary disorders [9], and even heart disease [10]. Many of these have involvement of cytokines. In addition, other undesired conditions such as

chrono- and photoaging are associated with breakdown and impaired synthesis of ECM proteins, especially collagen [2].

Interestingly, lipocalin levels are particularly elevated in some of these and other pathological states [11–15], as well as in site-specific injuries [16–18]. Furthermore, expression of lipocalins has been associated with regeneration and tissue repair [16–20], metamorphosis [16, 21, 22], pregnancy [23], chondrogenesis [24, 25], and other processes related to embryogenesis and postnatal development [14, 24, 26–28]. These findings suggest those proteins play a special role in morphogenesis. Lipocalin roles may be beyond their particular lipophilic ligand-binding properties, given the broad phylogenetic range and tissue distribution of lipocalins reported in these studies.

Lipocalins are among the most abundant proteins found in the venom of the *Lonomia obliqua* caterpillar [29, 30].

They are multifunctional proteins with a  $\beta$ -barrel structure, which share three characteristic conserved domains in their primary structure, namely, motifs 1–3 [31, 32]. The involvement of motif 2 in cell modulation displayed by lipocalins has been previously demonstrated through a peptide mapping approach studying a toxin from *L. obliqua* [33]. In this study, we investigated the effects of a peptide based on this lipocalin motif on human fibroblasts, evaluating the extracellular matrix proteins in vitro and in vivo, mobilization of intracellular calcium, and mediators involved in cell response.

## 2. Materials and Methods

**2.1. Reagents and Antibodies.** Ham's F-12 culture medium was purchased from Gibco BRL (Grand Island, NY, USA). Fetal bovine serum (FBS) and trypsin-EDTA were from Cultilab (Campinas, SP, Brazil). Vectashield mounting medium was from Vector Laboratories (Burlingame, CA, USA). Monoclonal antibodies to cellular fibronectin, human tenascin, and heat shock protein 47 (HSP47) were from Sigma-Aldrich (St. Louis, MO, USA). Other mouse IgG antibodies were from Santa Cruz Biotechnologies (Santa Cruz, CA). Alexa Fluor 488 goat anti-mouse IgG antibody was from Molecular Probes (Eugene, OR, USA). FLIPR Calcium 4 Assay Kit was obtained from Molecular Devices (Sunnyvale, CA, USA). All other reagents were supplied by Sigma-Aldrich (St. Louis, MO, USA).

**2.2. Peptide Synthesis.** Lipocalin motif-2-derived peptide (pm2b) [33], with the amino acid sequence YAIGYSCKDYK-OH, was obtained in automated benchtop simultaneous multiple solid-phase synthesizer, PSSM 8 system (Shimadzu, Kyoto, Japan) using Fmoc solid phase. The peptide was purified by reversed-phase chromatography semipreparative HPLC (Shim-pack Prep-ODS, Shimadzu), and its purity and identity were confirmed by LC-MS mass spectrometry Surveyor MSQ Plus, Thermo Fisher Scientific (San Jose, CA, USA) and by analytical HPLC.

**2.3. Cell Culture.** Cultures of primary human fibroblasts were obtained from skin biopsies. Cells were grown in Ham's F-12 medium, supplemented with FBS (15%), ampicillin (20 mg/mL), streptomycin (20 mg/mL), and gentamicin (40 mg/mL), at 37°C in a humidified 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. Having reached confluence, cells were washed three times with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), detached by mild treatment with trypsin-EDTA, and washed with FBS-supplemented medium. Experiments were carried out with cells from the second passage. To evaluate ECM proteins, fibroblasts ( $1.15 \times 10^5$  cells) were cultured on round slides in 24-well plates incubated with pm2b for 96 h in 500  $\mu$ L of medium. To obtain cell lysates, fibroblasts were cultured in 25 cm<sup>2</sup> culture flasks and incubated with pm2b for 96 h. For flow cytometry analysis, fibroblasts ( $1.5 \times 10^5$  cells/mL) were incubated for 72 h with pm2b in 10% or 1% FBS-supplemented medium. All experiments, unless indicated,

were carried out with the peptide at 230 nM. Peptide vehicle (150 mM NaCl) was used as control of treatments.

**2.4. Immunocytochemical Staining for ECM Proteins.** Cells were gently washed with PBS and fixed for 15 min in 3% paraformaldehyde, 0.2% glutaraldehyde, 0.1 M phosphate buffer, pH 7.4. Then, slides were washed with PBS and subjected to immunostaining with monoclonal antibody anticellular fibronectin, anti-HSP47, or anti-human tenascin and secondary antibody Alexa Fluor 488, according to manufacturer's instructions. Cells were washed and slides mounted with Vectashield. Slides were visualized under fluorescence microscopy (Carl Zeiss, Jena, Germany) by 200x magnification, and ten microscopic fields were analysed. Expressions of procollagen, fibronectin, and tenascin were quantified through morphometric analysis and digital densitometry using an Image System Analyzer (Kontron Electronic 300, Zeiss). Values were normalized to untreated controls.

**2.5. Western Blotting.** Cells were lysed in RIPA buffer for 20 min at 4°C and centrifuged for 5 min at 21,000 g, to obtain soluble and insoluble extracts. The cell lysate of treated (77 and 230 nM pm2b) and control fibroblasts were subjected to SDS-PAGE, using 30  $\mu$ g of each protein sample of soluble extracts. Fibronectin and laminin were analyzed using the insoluble extracts. Then, proteins were electrotransferred to nitrocellulose membrane, which was blocked with 1% bovine serum albumin in 20 mM Tris-HCl pH 7.4, 0.15 M NaCl, and 0.05% Tween (TBS-T) and incubated in the same buffer with primary antibodies for fibronectin, laminin, collagen type I, HSP47, and GADH as control. Membranes were washed with TBS-T and incubated with secondary antibody conjugated with alkaline phosphatase. Incubation with each antibody was according to manufacturer's instructions. Nitro blue tetrazolium and 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolylphosphate (NBT/BCIP) substrates were used for immunostaining. Proteins were quantified through digital densitometry using the ImageJ software (National Institutes of Health, USA). Values were normalized to untreated controls.

**2.6. In Vivo Treatment.** BALB/c mice ( $20 \pm 2$  g) were bred at Butantan Institute. Animals had free access to food and water and were in a light-dark cycle of 12 h. Mice were anesthetized with ketamine (75 mg/kg) and xylazine (10 mg/kg) i.p. and had the dorsum shaved. The animals were divided into 2 groups, treated with intradermal injections of a single dose of pm2b (0.2 mL, 1.15  $\mu$ M,  $n = 6$ ) or two repeated doses (7 days of interval,  $n = 4$ ) in a delimited site on the dorsum. Paired controls were injected with the vehicle (saline) in a delimited site on the opposite side in the same animal. Skin fragments of  $1 \times 1$  cm from each site (pm2b-treated and control) were collected in pairs of treated mice in intervals of one, two, and twelve weeks after single treatment, as well as one and twelve weeks after the first dose of repeated treatment. Skin samples were immediately fixed in 10% buffered-formalin for histological procedures.



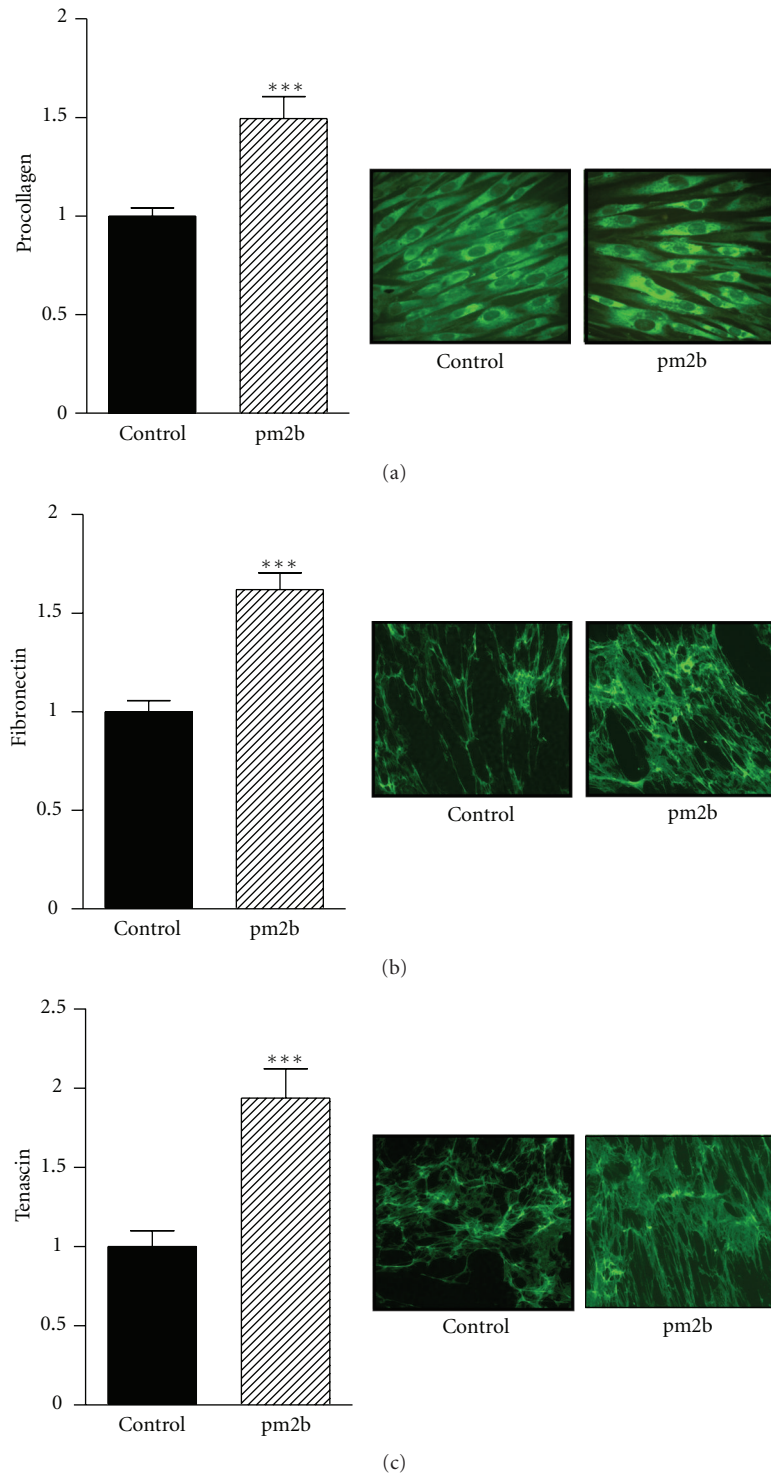


FIGURE 1: Extracellular matrix proteins in fibroblast culture. Procollagen (a), cellular fibronectin (b), and tenascin (c). Primary human fibroblasts were treated with pm2b (230 nM) and proteins were analyzed after 96 h by immunocytochemical staining (originally 400x). Data are representative images and expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM for triplicate measurements. \*\*\*  $P < 0.001$  versus control.

Mice were euthanized prior to biopsies. All procedures were performed in compliance with the tenets of the Brazilian Society of Laboratory Animal Science (SBCAL/COBEA) and the institutional ethics committee.

**2.7. Histological Analysis.** Tissue sections of 3  $\mu$ m thickness were stained with picrosirius red and examined under light microscopy (Carl Zeiss, Jena, Germany) coupled to Kontron 300 System Image Analyzer. Quantitative analysis of collagen

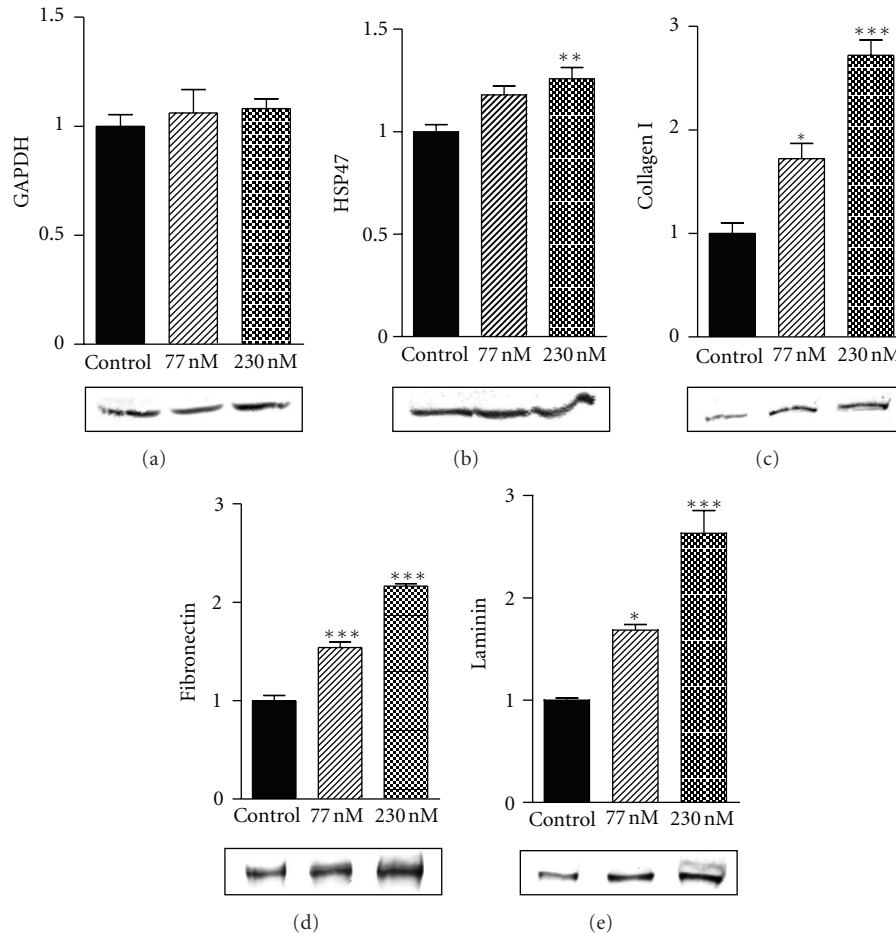


FIGURE 2: Extracellular matrix proteins in fibroblast lysate. Primary human fibroblasts were treated with pm2b (77 or 230 nM) and proteins were analyzed after 96 h by western blotting. Data are representative images and expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM for duplicate measurements. \*\*\* $P$  < 0.001, \*\* $P$  < 0.01, \* $P$  < 0.05 versus control.

was done from 10 microscopic fields at 200x magnification on flat sections of each biopsy through morphometric analysis and digital densitometry. Data were expressed as percentage of collagen staining to total area and in function of matched controls.

**2.8. Calcium Mobilization Assay.** Changes in free intracellular calcium concentration were measured by microfluorimetry using the FlexStation 3 (Molecular Devices, Sunnyvale, CA, USA) and FlexStation Calcium Assay Kit, following manufacturer's instructions. Fibroblasts were seeded at a density of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells per well in black-well plates with clear bottom. Prior to experiments, cells were incubated for 1 h, at 37°C with the calcium kit reagent in serum-free medium. Before measurements, the following treatments were added: ATP (10  $\mu$ M), thapsigargin (1  $\mu$ M), and pm2b (80 or 230 nM, immediately and 1 h before). Both the direct effect of pm2b and also its influence on calcium mobilization by thapsigargin were investigated. The inhibitory effect of BAPTA (10  $\mu$ M, 30 min before) was used as a positive interference control. Fluorescence was measured during 120 s, at 1.52 time intervals. Measurements were obtained

as the difference between the peak intensity fluorescence and baseline.

**2.9. Flow Cytometry Analysis.** Cells were gently washed with PBS and detached with trypsin-EDTA. After addition of FBS 10%, the cells were harvested and washed twice with PBS. Pellets were resuspended in 4% paraformaldehyde and stored at 4°C. Antibody labeling was done according to manufacturer's instructions at room temperature. Prior to analysis, cells were permeated with 0.1% Triton X-100 for 30 min, incubated for 2 h with the respective antibodies for caspase 3, Bcl-2, Ki-67- MIB-1, cytochrome c (cyt c), IL-1 $\beta$ , CXCR1, CXCR2, IL-6R, or collagen-1 receptor ( $\alpha 2\beta 1$ ), and then incubated with the secondary antibody Alexa Fluor 488 in the dark. Fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis was performed on a FACSCalibur flow cytometer, Becton Dickinson (San Jose, CA, USA). For each sample, at least 10,000 events were acquired and the data were evaluated using the Cell-Quest software.

**2.10. Statistical Analysis.** The difference among groups was analyzed by one-way or two-way analysis of variance

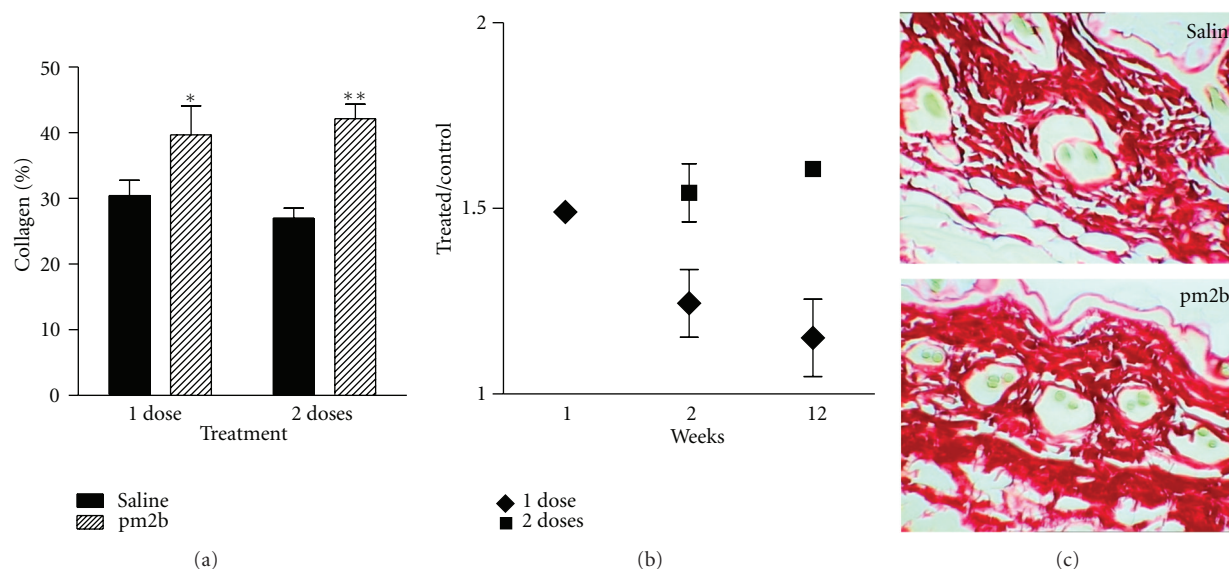


FIGURE 3: Peptide treatment increases collagen in the mice dermis. (a) Mean values of groups treated with a single dose (0.2 mL, 1.15  $\mu$ M pm2b, i.d.) or repeated doses compared with controls ( $n = 4-6$ ). (b) Matched observations of pm2b-treated and saline-treated sites ( $1 \times 1$  cm) in the same animals in successive intervals after treatment. (c) Picrosirius-red-stained sections (originally 340x). Data are representative images and expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM. \*\* $P < 0.01$ , \* $P < 0.05$  versus control.

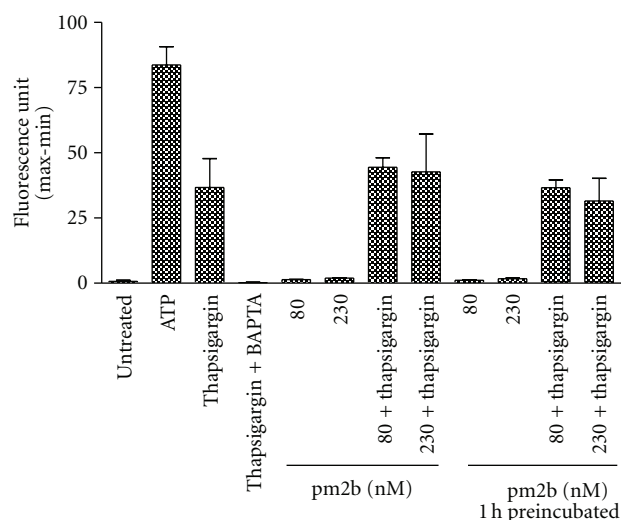


FIGURE 4: Calcium mobilization in fibroblasts. Fibroblasts were treated with pm2b at different concentrations immediately and 1 h before the test, and with thapsigargin (1  $\mu$ M), BAPTA (10  $\mu$ M, 30 min before), and ATP (10  $\mu$ M). Data are expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM for duplicate measurements.

(ANOVA) and Student's *t*-test. Data are expressed as mean  $\pm$  standard error (SEM) and representative images from each group. Differences were considered statistically significant when  $P < 0.05$ .

### 3. Results

**3.1. Increased Production of ECM Proteins in Fibroblast Culture.** To evaluate if pm2b was able to modulate fibroblast

response, we assessed if the peptide could interfere with the production of ECM proteins by primary human fibroblasts in culture.

Immunofluorescence results showed that treatment with pm2b induced a significant increase of procollagen, fibronectin, and tenascin, as shown in Figure 1. In comparison to nontreated cultures, pm2b-treated fibroblasts showed almost onefold increase in tenascin (94%) and an increase in 49% of procollagen and 62% of fibronectin. Analysis of collagen type I, fibronectin, and laminin in the cell lysates by western blotting showed a significant increase in all these proteins in cultures treated with the peptide at 70 or 230 nM and a slight increase in HSP47 (Figure 2).

**3.2. Increased Production of Collagen In Vivo.** Since the peptide treatment induced a change in the content of ECM proteins in vitro, we assessed whether if pm2b was also able to increase the amount of collagen in vivo in the mice dermis (Figure 3). Interaction of pm2b treatment and the collagen content was statistically significant (two-way ANOVA,  $P < 0.05$ ), either if it was lower than that observed in vitro. Treatment with a single dose induced a mean increase of local collagen fibrils in about 10%, while with two repeated doses the mean increase was 15% (Figure 3(a)). With a single dose, the higher difference to controls was observed 7 days after treatment. The ratio between treated area and control dropped along the time. Interestingly, in the group treated with 2 doses of pm2b, the collagen increase lasted for 3 months (Figure 3(b)).

**3.3. Calcium Mobilization.** Increase of intracellular calcium in fibroblasts was observed by using ATP or thapsigargin (Figure 4). As expected, pretreatment with BAPTA abolished

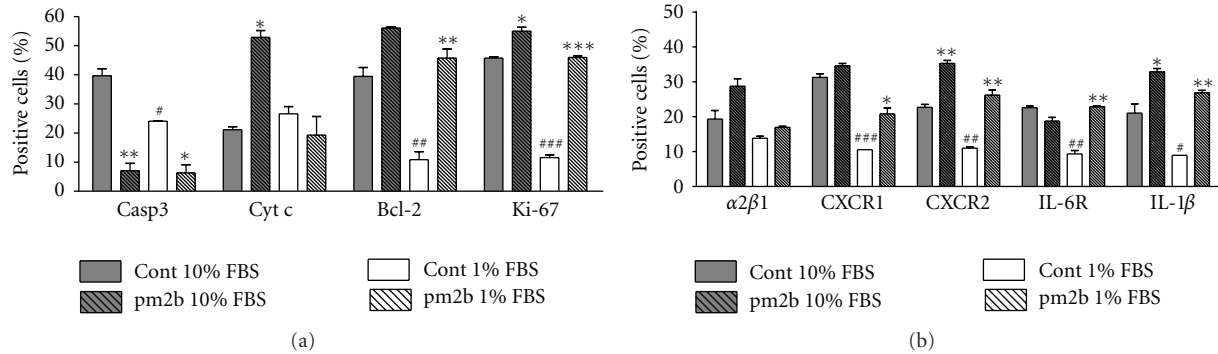


FIGURE 5: Differential expression of mediators involved in cell viability (a), cytokine and receptors (b). Fibroblasts were cultured with pm2b (230 nM) for 72 h with 10% or 1% FBS and analyzed by FACS. Data are expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM for triplicate measurements. \*\*\*  $P < 0.01$ , \*\*  $P < 0.01$ , \*  $P < 0.05$  versus controls. ###  $P < 0.01$ , ##  $P < 0.01$ , #  $P < 0.05$  versus controls with 10% FBS.

the effect of thapsigargin. On the other hand, the peptide investigated showed no direct effect on intracellular calcium mobilization. In addition, it did not seem to interfere with the action of thapsigargin.

**3.4. Modulation of Mediators Involved in Cell Viability and Inflammation.** To investigate the mechanisms underlying fibroblast responses induced by pm2b, a set of mediators expressed by the cells in 1% and 10% FBS-supplemented medium were analyzed. Either treated or nontreated cultures showed different responses in these two conditions. pm2b promoted a synergistic modulation of mediators involved in apoptosis, antiapoptosis, and proliferation, resulting in a prosurvival response. As seen in Figure 5(a), pm2b suppressed caspase-3 and upregulated Bcl-2 and Ki-67. As shown in Figure 5(b), increases in CXCR1 and IL-6R were observed only with 1% FBS. On the other hand, cyt c was exclusively upregulated in 10% FBS-supplemented medium. In both conditions, there was a slight increase in the  $\alpha 2\beta 1$  expression, but not statistically significant. CXCR2 and IL-1 $\beta$  were markedly increased in both culture conditions.

#### 4. Discussion

It is well known that morphogenesis and other physiological processes consist in a chain of events regulated by cross-talk signaling between ECM cells, receptors, and signaling factors [34]. However, lipocalin roles in these processes are not clearly understood. Regardless of many reports describing lipocalins as biomarkers of diseases [11] and others that correlate high lipocalin expression levels with stress conditions [35] and injury [16, 17], little is known about the biological activities of these multifunctional proteins and how they can modulate tissue and cell responses.

Lipocalins are classically recognized as carriers of lipophilic molecules. However, outgrowing data on the literature have indicated they are more than that. Some authors have suggested lipocalin motifs should play important roles in the structure pattern and functional properties of these proteins [31, 32, 36]. Bioinformatic analysis and peptide

mapping indicated motif 2 is implicated in cell modulation and suggested it is a sequence signature with a role in cell survival [33]. However, its possible effects in fibroblasts were not known.

We have obtained a synthetic peptide with amino acid sequence based on the lipocalin motif 2, found in Lopap—an insect lipocalin from the *L. obliqua* caterpillar [37]. Lopap was previously shown to have a direct effect on endothelial cells increasing the surface expression of cell adhesion molecules, triggering IL-8 and nitric oxide release, and displaying antiapoptotic activity [36–40]. The peptide reproduced the effects observed with the whole protein, exhibiting an antiapoptotic activity in endothelial cells and neutrophils, which is dependent on nitric oxide synthase activity [33].

Herein, results demonstrate the peptide can modulate mediators favoring a prosurvival response, with suppression of caspase 3—a key proapoptotic enzyme, and up-regulation of the antiapoptotic protein Bcl-2, as well as the proliferation marker Ki-67. Other studies have also attributed to lipocalins roles in cell survival in different cell lineages [41–43], which support the hypothesis of a common property among lipocalins. This effect can be important for the lipocalin roles in several developmental and repairing processes, for protective response to stress, as well as for their possible involvement in many diseases.

Interestingly, pm2b treatment increased ECM proteins in vitro and in vivo. Fibroblasts are metabolically active cells which major function is the production of ECM components [1]. Our findings suggest for the first time a lipocalin role in ECM modulation. This finding brings new insights to understanding the involvement of lipocalins in the pathophysiology of diseases involving ECM deposition/remodeling defects. The difference in the amount of collagen increase induced by pm2b in vitro and in vivo may be due to collagen degradation by matrix metalloproteinases or either the peptide dose used and its stability in the tissue. Ki-67 is absent in resting cells and present during all phases of cell cycle, but otherwise its role in ribosomal RNA synthesis [44] may be related to the increase in synthesis activity observed in fibroblasts.



Fibroblast modulation by pm2b was shown to involve cytokine signaling favoring a proinflammatory response. Besides the previously reported modulation of IL-8 by Lopap [39], results showed the induction of the IL-8 receptors. Expression of the chemokine receptor CXCR1 was increased only in serum-deprived cultures, while expression of its paralog CXCR2 was increased no matter the assay condition. IL-8 and its receptors are known to have an autocrine role in cell survival [45]. There are also reports describing the involvement of IL-1 [46] and IL-6/IL-6R [47] in antiapoptotic responses. On the other hand, a local proinflammatory response can contribute for healing and regeneration [48]. However, the mechanisms by which Lopap and derived peptide trigger cell responses have to be investigated. As results show, it does not seem to involve changes in calcium transients.

To our knowledge, this is the first report of lipocalins modulating fibroblasts and ECM proteins, which could be directly implicated to their roles in morphogenesis and tissue homeostasis. The involvement of growth factors and cytokines in development and repairing process is well described [49]. However, lipocalins may be also considered as important players in these processes. Therefore, the mechanisms by which these proteins can trigger cell modulation have to be carefully investigated. Understanding the effects of these proteins can open perspectives for their use in prognosis and treatment of many dysfunctions involving wound healing, tissue remodeling, and cell death.

## Acknowledgments

This work was supported by Brazilian agencies: Financiadora de Estudos e Projetos (FINEP), Fundação de Amparo à Pesquisa do Estado de São Paulo (FAPESP, CAT/CEPID), Conselho Nacional de Pesquisa e Desenvolvimento (CNPq), and INCTTOX-CNPq/FAPESP program. L. C. Carrijo-Carvalho, J. S. Ventura, and K. L. P. Morais held scholarships from FAPESP. L. C. Carrijo-Carvalho is a Postdoctoral Fellow from CAT/CEPID-FAPESP (2010/00600-0).

## References

- [1] R. J. McAnulty, "Fibroblasts and myofibroblasts: their source, function and role in disease," *International Journal of Biochemistry and Cell Biology*, vol. 39, no. 4, pp. 666–671, 2007.
- [2] G. J. Fisher, J. Varani, and J. J. Voorhees, "Looking older: fibroblast collapse and therapeutic implications," *Archives of Dermatology*, vol. 144, no. 5, pp. 666–672, 2008.
- [3] J. P. Hodde and C. E. Johnson, "Extracellular matrix as a strategy for treating chronic wounds," *American Journal of Clinical Dermatology*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 61–66, 2007.
- [4] H. Ihn, "Scleroderma, fibroblasts, signaling, and excessive extracellular matrix," *Current Rheumatology Reports*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 156–162, 2005.
- [5] T. A. Wynn, "Cellular and molecular mechanisms of fibrosis," *Journal of Pathology*, vol. 214, no. 2, pp. 199–210, 2008.
- [6] G. Riley, "Chronic tendon pathology: molecular basis and therapeutic implications," *Expert Reviews in Molecular Medicine*, vol. 7, no. 5, pp. 1–25, 2005.
- [7] E. Black, J. Vibe-Petersen, L. N. Jorgensen et al., "Decrease of collagen deposition in wound repair in type 1 diabetes independent of glycemic control," *Archives of Surgery*, vol. 138, no. 1, pp. 34–40, 2003.
- [8] R. L. Chevalier, B. A. Thornhill, M. S. Forbes, and S. C. Kiley, "Mechanisms of renal injury and progression of renal disease in congenital obstructive nephropathy," *Pediatric Nephrology*, vol. 25, no. 4, pp. 687–697, 2010.
- [9] O. Sacco, M. Silvestri, F. Sabatini, R. Sale, A. C. Defilippi, and G. A. Rossi, "Epithelial cells and fibroblasts: structural repair and remodelling in the airways," *Paediatric Respiratory Reviews*, vol. 5, pp. S35–S40, 2004.
- [10] S. Rutschow, J. Li, H. P. Schultheiss, and M. Pauschinger, "Myocardial proteases and matrix remodeling in inflammatory heart disease," *Cardiovascular Research*, vol. 69, no. 3, pp. 646–656, 2006.
- [11] S. Xu and P. Venge, "Lipocalins as biochemical markers of disease," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1482, no. 1–2, pp. 298–307, 2000.
- [12] E. A. Thomas, S. M. Laws, J. G. Sutcliffe et al., "Apolipoprotein D levels are elevated in prefrontal cortex of subjects with Alzheimer's disease: no relation to apolipoprotein E expression or genotype," *Biological Psychiatry*, vol. 54, no. 2, pp. 136–141, 2003.
- [13] A. L. Hemdahl, A. Gabrielsen, C. Zhu et al., "Expression of neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin in atherosclerosis and myocardial infarction," *Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis, and Vascular Biology*, vol. 26, no. 1, pp. 136–142, 2006.
- [14] K. Mori and K. Nakao, "Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin as the real-time indicator of active kidney damage," *Kidney International*, vol. 71, no. 10, pp. 967–970, 2007.
- [15] J. Yang and M. A. Moses, "Lipocalin 2: a multifaceted modulator of human cancer," *Cell Cycle*, vol. 8, no. 15, pp. 2347–2352, 2009.
- [16] H. J. Kim, H. J. Je, H. M. Cheon et al., "Accumulation of 23 kDa lipocalin during brain development and injury in *Hyphantria cunea*," *Insect Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, vol. 35, no. 10, pp. 1133–1141, 2005.
- [17] M. D. Ganfornina, S. Do Carmo, E. Martínez et al., "ApoD, a glia-derived apolipoprotein, is required for peripheral nerve functional integrity and a timely response to injury," *Glia*, vol. 58, no. 11, pp. 1320–1334, 2010.
- [18] S. Petta, C. Tripodo, S. Grimaudo et al., "High liver RBP4 protein content is associated with histological features in patients with genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C and with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis," *Digestive and Liver Disease*, vol. 43, no. 5, pp. 404–410, 2011.
- [19] P. Spreyer, H. Schaal, G. Kuhn et al., "Regeneration-associated high level expression of apolipoprotein D mRNA in endoneurial fibroblasts of peripheral nerve," *EMBO Journal*, vol. 9, no. 8, pp. 2479–2484, 1990.
- [20] R. J. Playford, A. Belo, R. Poulson et al., "Effects of mouse and human lipocalin homologues 24p3/lcn2 and neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin on gastrointestinal mucosal integrity and repair," *Gastroenterology*, vol. 131, no. 3, pp. 809–817, 2006.
- [21] A. Kawahara, A. Hikosaka, T. Sasado, and K. Hirota, "Thyroid hormone-dependent repression of  $\alpha$ 1-microglobulin/bikunin precursor (AMB) gene expression during amphibian metamorphosis," *Development Genes and Evolution*, vol. 206, no. 6, pp. 355–362, 1997.
- [22] K. Yamauchi, H. A. Takeuchi, M. Overall, M. Dziadek, S. L. A. Munro, and G. Schreiber, "Structural characteristics of

- bullfrog (*Rana catesbeiana*) transthyretin and its cDNA. Comparison of its pattern of expression during metamorphosis with that of lipocalin," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 256, no. 2, pp. 287–296, 1998.
- [23] F. Stewart, M. W. Kennedy, and S. Suire, "A novel uterine lipocalin supporting pregnancy in equids," *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, vol. 57, no. 10, pp. 1373–1378, 2000.
  - [24] F. D. Cancedda, B. Dozin, B. Zerega, S. Cermelli, and R. Cancedda, "Ex-FABP: a fatty acid binding lipocalin developmentally regulated in chicken endochondral bone formation and myogenesis," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1482, no. 1–2, pp. 127–135, 2000.
  - [25] A. Pagano, P. Giannoni, A. Zambotti et al., "CAL $\beta$ , a novel lipocalin associated with chondrogenesis and inflammation," *European Journal of Cell Biology*, vol. 81, no. 5, pp. 264–272, 2002.
  - [26] D. Sanchez, M. D. Ganfornina, and M. J. Bastiani, "Developmental expression of the lipocalin Lazarillo and its role in axonal pathfinding in the grasshopper embryo," *Development*, vol. 121, no. 1, pp. 135–147, 1995.
  - [27] C. Gentili, G. Tutolo, B. Zerega, E. Di Marco, R. Cancedda, and F. Descalzi Cancedda, "Acute phase lipocalin Ex-FABP is involved in heart development and cell survival," *Journal of Cellular Physiology*, vol. 202, no. 3, pp. 683–689, 2005.
  - [28] Z. Li, V. Korzh, and Z. Gong, "Localized rbp4 expression in the yolk syncytial layer plays a role in yolk cell extension and early liver development," *BMC Developmental Biology*, vol. 7, article 117, 2007.
  - [29] M. E. Ricci-Silva, R. H. Valente, I. R. León et al., "Immunochemical and proteomic technologies as tools for unravelling toxins involved in envenoming by accidental contact with *Lonomia obliqua* caterpillars," *Toxicon*, vol. 51, no. 6, pp. 1017–1028, 2008.
  - [30] A. B. G. Veiga, J. M. C. Ribeiro, J. A. Guimarães, and I. M. B. Francischetti, "A catalog for the transcripts from the venomous structures of the caterpillar *Lonomia obliqua*: identification of the proteins potentially involved in the coagulation disorder and hemorrhagic syndrome," *Gene*, vol. 355, no. 1–2, pp. 11–27, 2005.
  - [31] D. R. Flower, A. C. T. North, and T. K. Attwood, "Structure and sequence relationships in the lipocalins and related proteins," *Protein Science*, vol. 2, no. 5, pp. 753–761, 1993.
  - [32] D. R. Flower, "The lipocalin protein family: structure and function," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 318, no. 1, pp. 1–14, 1996.
  - [33] A. M. Chudzinski-Tavassi, L. C. Carrijo-Carvalho, K. Waismam, S. H. P. Farsky, O. H. P. Ramos, and C. V. Reis, "A lipocalin sequence signature modulates cell survival," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 584, no. 13, pp. 2896–2900, 2010.
  - [34] T. Rozario and D. W. DeSimone, "The extracellular matrix in development and morphogenesis: a dynamic view," *Developmental Biology*, vol. 341, no. 1, pp. 126–140, 2010.
  - [35] S. Do Carmo, L. C. Levros Jr., and E. Rassart, "Modulation of apolipoprotein D expression and translocation under specific stress conditions," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1773, no. 6, pp. 954–969, 2007.
  - [36] A. C. T. North, "Three-dimensional arrangement of conserved amino acid residues in a superfamily of specific ligand-binding proteins," *International Journal of Biological Macromolecules*, vol. 11, no. 1, pp. 56–58, 1989.
  - [37] C. V. Reis, S. A. Andrade, O. H. P. Ramos et al., "Lopap, a prothrombin activator from *Lonomia obliqua* belonging to the lipocalin family: recombinant production, biochemical characterization and structure-function insights," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 398, no. 2, pp. 295–302, 2006.
  - [38] A. M. Chudzinski-Tavassi, M. Schattner, M. Fritzen et al., "Effects of Lopap on human endothelial cells and platelets," *Haemostasis*, vol. 31, no. 3–6, pp. 257–265, 2001.
  - [39] M. Fritzen, M. P. A. Flores, C. V. Reis, and A. M. Chudzinski-Tavassi, "A prothrombin activator (Lopap) modulating inflammation, coagulation and cell survival mechanisms," *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, vol. 333, no. 2, pp. 517–523, 2005.
  - [40] K. Waismam, A. M. Chudzinski-Tavassi, L. C. Carrijo-Carvalho, M. T. Fernandes Pacheco, and S. H. P. Farsky, "Lopap: a non-inflammatory and cytoprotective molecule in neutrophils and endothelial cells," *Toxicon*, vol. 53, no. 6, pp. 652–659, 2009.
  - [41] P. Berman, P. Gray, E. Chen et al., "Sequence analysis, cellular localization, and expression of a neuroretina adhesion and cell survival molecule," *Cell*, vol. 51, no. 1, pp. 135–142, 1987.
  - [42] M. Taniike, I. Mohri, N. Eguchi, C. T. Beuckmann, K. Suzuki, and Y. Urade, "Perineuronal oligodendrocytes protect against neuronal apoptosis through the production of lipocalin-type prostaglandin D synthase in a genetic demyelinating model," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 22, no. 12, pp. 4885–4896, 2002.
  - [43] Z. Tong, X. Wu, D. Ovcharenko, J. Zhu, C. S. Chen, and J. P. Kehrer, "Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin as a survival factor," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 391, no. 2, pp. 441–448, 2005.
  - [44] J. Bullwinkel, B. Baron-Lühr, A. Lüdemann, C. Wohlenberg, J. Gerdes, and T. Scholzen, "Ki-67 protein is associated with ribosomal RNA transcription in quiescent and proliferating cells," *Journal of Cellular Physiology*, vol. 206, no. 3, pp. 624–635, 2006.
  - [45] A. Li, M. L. Varney, J. Valasek, M. Godfrey, B. J. Dave, and R. K. Singh, "Autocrine role of interleukin-8 in induction of endothelial cell proliferation, survival, migration and MMP-2 production and angiogenesis," *Angiogenesis*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 63–71, 2005.
  - [46] L. A. Madge and J. S. Pober, "A phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt pathway, activated by tumor necrosis factor or interleukin-1, inhibits apoptosis but does not activate NF $\kappa$ B in human endothelial cells," *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 275, no. 20, pp. 15458–15465, 2000.
  - [47] H. Ellingsgaard, J. A. Ehses, E. B. Hammar et al., "Interleukin-6 regulates pancreatic  $\alpha$ -cell mass expansion," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 105, no. 35, pp. 13163–13168, 2008.
  - [48] R. Gillitzer and M. Goebeler, "Chemokines in cutaneous wound healing," *Journal of Leukocyte Biology*, vol. 69, no. 4, pp. 513–521, 2001.
  - [49] S. Werner and R. Grose, "Regulation of wound healing by growth factors and cytokines," *Physiological Reviews*, vol. 83, no. 3, pp. 835–870, 2003.

## Review Article

# Towards Therapeutic Applications of Arthropod Venom $K^+$ -Channel Blockers in CNS Neurologic Diseases Involving Memory Acquisition and Storage

Christiano D. C. Gati,<sup>1,2</sup> Márcia R. Mortari,<sup>1</sup> and Elisabeth F. Schwartz<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Departamento de Ciências Fisiológicas, Instituto de Ciências Biológicas, Universidade de Brasília, 70910-900 Brasília, DF, Brazil

<sup>2</sup> Universidade Católica de Brasília, 71966-700 Brasília, DF, Brazil

Correspondence should be addressed to Elisabeth F. Schwartz, efschwa@unb.br

Received 29 December 2011; Accepted 8 February 2012

Academic Editor: Yonghua Ji

Copyright © 2012 Christiano D. C. Gati et al. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Potassium channels are the most heterogeneous and widely distributed group of ion channels and play important functions in all cells, in both normal and pathological mechanisms, including learning and memory processes. Being fundamental for many diverse physiological processes,  $K^+$ -channels are recognized as potential therapeutic targets in the treatment of several Central Nervous System (CNS) diseases, such as multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's and Alzheimer's diseases, schizophrenia, HIV-1-associated dementia, and epilepsy. Blockers of these channels are therefore potential candidates for the symptomatic treatment of these neuropathies, through their neurological effects. Venomous animals have evolved a wide set of toxins for prey capture and defense. These compounds, mainly peptides, act on various pharmacological targets, making them an innumerable source of ligands for answering experimental paradigms, as well as for therapeutic application. This paper provides an overview of CNS  $K^+$ -channels involved in memory acquisition and storage and aims at evaluating the use of highly selective  $K^+$ -channel blockers derived from arthropod venoms as potential therapeutic agents for CNS diseases involving learning and memory mechanisms.

## 1. Introduction

Many efforts have been made to understand the physiological mechanisms responsible for learning and memory. Due to their complexity, different approaches have been used to unlock them and various actors of these phenomena have been often revealed [1, 2]. In the last two decades, a new agent has gained the attention of the scientific community studying the processes of learning and memory: the potassium channels [3].

Potassium channels (KCNs) exhibit a great diversity (for review see [4, 5]). In mammals, nine and ten genes that encode channels for  $Na^+$  and  $Ca^{2+}$  have been described, respectively. Nonetheless, for KCN they are 78 genes, at least [5]. In addition to this large number of genes, alternative splicing, RNA editing, posttranslational modifications, and channel formation of heteromeric assembly by the association of different principal subunits also contribute to the

diversity of KCN [4]. These channels can be grouped into four families: voltage-gated channels ( $K_v$ ), calcium-activated channels ( $K_{Ca}$ ), inward-rectifiers channels ( $K_{ir}$ ) and two tandem-pore channels ( $K_{2P}$ ). Furthermore, these families have many subfamilies each containing several members:  $K_v$  have 12 subfamilies ( $K_{v1}$ - $K_{v12}$ ),  $K_{Ca}$ , 5 subfamilies ( $K_{Ca1}$ - $K_{Ca5}$ ), the  $K_{ir}$ , 7 subfamilies ( $K_{ir1}$ - $K_{ir7}$ ), and  $K_{2P}$ , 15 subfamilies ( $K_{2P1}$ - $K_{2P7}$ ,  $K_{2P9}$ ,  $K_{2P10}$ ,  $K_{2P12}$ ,  $K_{2P13}$  and  $K_{2P15}$ - $K_{2P18}$ ) [6–9].

The four families of KCNs are structurally related.  $K_v$ ,  $K_{ir}$ , and  $K_{Ca}$  are transmembrane proteins formed by four  $\alpha$ -subunits, whereas in  $K_{2P}$  there are only two.  $\alpha$ -Subunits of all  $K_v$ ,  $K_{Ca2}$ , and  $K_{Ca3}$  have six transmembrane segments (6TM), while in  $K_{Ca1}$ ,  $K_{Ca4}$ , and  $K_{Ca5}$  are 7TM. All  $K_{ir}$  have  $\alpha$ -subunits with 2TM and those of  $K_{2P}$  contain 4TM. When  $\alpha$ -subunits join to form a channel, they may be identical and thus generating homodimeric or homotetrameric (homomultimeric) channels or may be different resulting

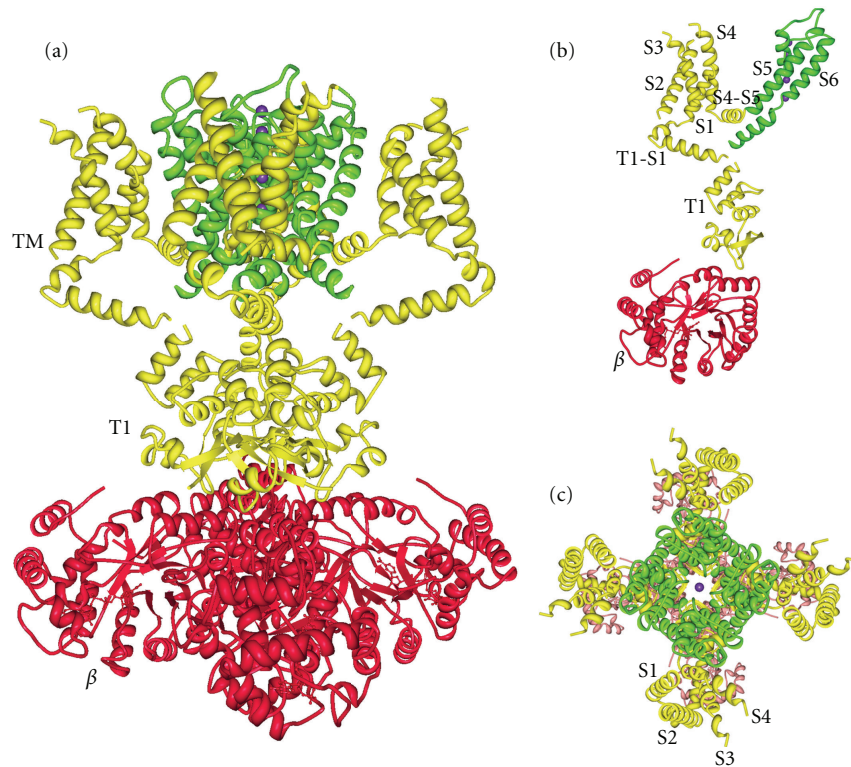


FIGURE 1: Views of the  $K_v1.2$ - $\beta_2$  subunit complex. (a) Side view of the  $K_v1.2$ - $\beta_2$  structure with the extracellular solution above and the intracellular solution below. Four subunits of the channel are colored in yellow (T1 domain and voltage sensor) and green (pore).  $\beta$  subunit tetramer is colored in red. TM indicates the integral membrane component of the complex. (b) Stereoview of a single subunit of the channel and  $\beta$  subunit viewed from the side. Labels correspond to six transmembrane helices (S1 to S6). (c) View of the  $K_v1.2$ - $\beta_2$  structure from the extracellular side of the membrane. S1–S4 helices from each subunit form four surrounding voltage-sensing domains, S5–S6 regions (green) from the four subunits shape a single pore domain. Purple spheres are potassium ions. Images were generated using Protein Workshop Viewer 3.9 [15] and Protein Data Bank accession ID 2A79 [14].

in heterodimeric or heterotetrameric (heteromultimeric) channels. Heteromultimeric channels are formed by the association of different  $\alpha$ -subunits of the same subfamily.  $\alpha$ -Subunits assembly of  $K_{2P}$  forms two pores and the in other KCNs there is one pore (for reviews, see [4, 5, 10–13]). The X-ray structure of mammalian  $K_v1.2$  channel with the  $\beta_2$  subunit (Figure 1) was reported by Long et al. [14]. In accordance with what is mentioned above,  $K_v$  channels are formed by four  $\alpha$ -subunits that generate one pore (Figures 1(a) and 1(c)). Each  $K_v1.2$  channel subunit contains six transmembrane segments, termed S1 to S6 (Figure 1(b)). The S5–S6 regions (Figures 1(a)–1(c), green) from the four subunits shape a single pore domain. The S1–S4 helices from each subunit form four surrounding voltage-sensing domains (Figures 1(b) and 1(c)).

KCNs have a significant influence on the neuron's activity, functioning of neuronal circuits, and brain plasticity. These channels regulate action potential firing patterns and control neurotransmitter release by constraining local membrane excitability and limiting  $Ca^{2+}$  influx (for review, see [16]). Furthermore, KCNs participate in the induction of synaptic plasticity by shape excitatory postsynaptic

potentials (EPSPs) and enhance synaptic integration through their N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR), the cellular analogue for learning and memory (for review, see [3]). Therefore, KCNs may have an important role in cognition.

This possible involvement of KCN in cognitive processes is reinforced by its strong presence in Central Nervous System (CNS). These channels have a wide distribution in the brain of mammals. Several members of the  $K_v$  families [17–20],  $K_{Ca}$  [21–25],  $K_{ir}$  [26–29], and  $K_{2P}$  [30, 31], are found in the telencephalon, diencephalon, brainstem, and cerebellum of mammals.

The use of KCN blockers has aided to elucidate the function of these channels in the CNS. The tetraethylammonium (TEA) and 4-aminopyridine (4-AP) are traditional (classical) pharmacological blockers for KCN [32]. However, they are not specific, neither act on all types of KCN. TEA blocks different subtypes of  $K_v$  channels (except  $K_v4.2$ ,  $K_v4.3$ ,  $K_v5.1$ ,  $K_v7.1$  and all of the subfamilies  $K_v6$ ,  $K_v8$ – $K_v12$ ),  $K_{Ca}$  (except subfamily  $K_{Ca2}$  and  $K_{Ca3}$ ), and subtypes  $K_{ir3.4}$  and  $K_{ir7.1}$ , but has no effect on  $K_{2P}$  channels (for review see [6–9]). The 4-AP also operates on different subtypes of  $K_v$  channels (except  $K_v3.4$ ,  $K_v5.1$ , and all  $K_v6$ – $K_v12$ ),  $K_{ir3.4}$ , and



K<sub>ir</sub>7.1, but not on K<sub>Ca</sub> channels, neither on the K<sub>2P</sub> [6–9]. Therefore, the potential of these blockers to investigate the role of KCN on cognitive processes is limited.

Their diversity, distribution, and function suggest that the potassium channels could be involved in different cognitive processes, leading to a complex scenario that embarrass the understanding of the role of each K<sup>+</sup>-channel subtype in these events. This challenge is even more complicated by the lack of drugs that act specifically on each type of KCN. One way to solve this problem has been the use of toxins isolated from invertebrates' venoms as K<sup>+</sup>-channels blockers.

Many animal toxins, such as those isolated from spider, scorpion, and bee venoms, are specific blockers of potassium channels. While TEA operates in millimolar concentrations, scorpion toxins bind to and block K<sub>v</sub> channels with pico- or nanomolar affinities [33]. Apamin, a toxin isolated from the bee venom, blocks K<sub>Ca</sub>2.2 and K<sub>Ca</sub>2.3 channels with affinity of the order of picomolar [34]. Therefore, animal venom toxins may be more useful as pharmacological tools than the classical blockers (TEA and 4-AP) as they act on K<sup>+</sup>-channels with high potency and selectivity [35].

The aim of this paper is to review the knowledge accumulated on the importance of KCN to the processes of learning and memory. In addition, we present the contribution and potential use of toxins isolated from spiders, scorpions, and bees as pharmacological tools in this investigation. Finally, the participation of KCN in clinical conditions holding cognitive deficits and the possible use of toxins from animals as therapeutic agents are also considered.

## 2. Potassium Channels in Learning and Memory

The hippocampus has a great importance in learning and memory processes. This limbic structure holds a key in the consolidation of explicit memory. It receives information of events and transfers them to the neocortex where they are stored for a period (even weeks) and then gradually returned to specific regions of the cerebral cortex contributing to the formation of long-term memory [36].

The hippocampus expresses many types of KCN. As shown in Table 1, 39 different types of KCN belonging to the four families (K<sub>v</sub>, K<sub>Ca</sub>, K<sub>2P</sub>, and K<sub>ir</sub>) have been identified in this neural structure. Of these, the more expressed channels in the hippocampus appear to be the K<sub>v</sub>7.2, K<sub>v</sub>7.3, K<sub>Ca</sub>1.1, K<sub>ir</sub>3.2, and K<sub>ir</sub>3.3, followed by K<sub>v</sub>1.1, K<sub>v</sub>1.6, K<sub>v</sub>3.1, K<sub>v</sub>4.2, K<sub>v</sub>10.1, K<sub>Ca</sub>2.1, K<sub>Ca</sub>2.2, and K<sub>ir</sub>3.1 (Table 1). What would be the role of this KCN diversity in the hippocampus?

Many experimental studies (Table 2) show that KCN may have a significant contribution in learning and memory processes. In these studies, the activity or expression of K<sup>+</sup> channels in the brain of rats and mice was altered by different strategies. The impact of this manipulation on the learning and memory was accessed by behavioral tests.

Ghelardini et al. [50] worked with mice subjected to passive avoidance test (Table 2). They found that intracerebroventricular (i.c.v.) administration of minoxidil, pinacidil, and cromakalim (KCN openers) produced amnesia. However, TEA, gliquidone and glibenclamide (KCN blockers)

prevented this effect. These researchers also used toxins (apamin and charybdotoxin) whose results will be addressed later in the present paper.

Vick et al. [53] studied mice submitted to object recognition task, contextual fear-conditioning paradigm, and tone fear-conditioning paradigm (Table 2). Systemic 1-ethyl-2-benzimidazolinone (EBIO) and cyclohexyl-[2-(3,5-dimethylpyrazol-1-yl)-6-methyl-pyrimidin-4-yl]-amine (CyPPA), K<sub>Ca</sub>2 channel activators, impaired the encoding, but not retrieval, of object memory in a spontaneous object recognition task. In addition, EBIO did not affect contextual or cued fear memory. They also tested apamin and this treatment will be discussed in Section 4.1.

Matthews and Disterhoft [54] observed rats submitted to trace eyeblink conditioning (Table 2). Intrahippocampal (CA1) injection of paxilline, a K<sub>Ca</sub>1.1 channel blocker, resulted in slowed learning of the task.

Hammond et al. [55] produced transgenic mice that overexpress K<sub>Ca</sub>2.2 subunits by 10-fold and tested them by Morris water maze, contextual fear-conditioning paradigm, and tone fear-conditioning paradigm on mice (Table 2). They found that this condition impaired learning in all tasks. The same results for these animals in contextual fear-conditioning paradigm were obtained for Stackman et al. [56].

Jacobsen et al. [57] tested doxycycline-induced conditional K<sub>Ca</sub>2.3-deficient mice in five distinct learning and memory paradigms: passive-avoidance test, Morris water maze test, object recognition task, Y-maze test, and five-trial inhibitory avoidance test. Impairment was only observed in the last two tasks (with no effect on the others).

Deng et al. [58] worked with rats subjected to Morris water maze test (Table 2). They infused small interfering RNA (siRNA) in the entorhinal cortex (EC) to knock down K<sub>2P</sub>10.1 channels. Baclofen, a specific  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABAB) receptor agonist, was also applied into EC. The treatment of rats with siRNA abolished baclofen-induced inhibition of spatial learning. When administered alone, siRNA tended to improve the learning ability of rats.

Wickaman et al. [46] employed mice lacking a functional K<sub>ir</sub>3.4 gene and submitted them to passive-avoidance test and Morris water maze test (Table 2). These mice performed similarly to wild-type controls in the first task, however, exhibited impaired performance in latter.

Betourne et al. [48] worked with wild-type and K<sub>ir</sub>6.2 knockout mice submitted to Morris water maze test, contextual fear-conditioning paradigm, and tone fear-conditioning paradigm (Table 2). In wild-type mice, intra-hippocampal (CA3) injection of diazoxide (K<sub>ir</sub>6.2 opener) impaired contextual memory. This effect was reversed by co-injecting tolbutamide (K<sub>ir</sub>6.2 blocker). The K<sub>ir</sub>6.2 knockout mice presented impairment of contextual and tone memories and slightly impaired performance in Morris water maze (special memory).

It has been described that K<sub>v</sub>1.1 channels contribute to the processes of learning and memory. Meiri et al. [51] were able to inhibit the expression of K<sub>v</sub>1.1 in the hippocampus,

TABLE 1: Distribution of different types of K<sup>+</sup> channels in hippocampus.

Channels	Hippocampus			Employed technique	Ref.
	CA1	CA3	DG		
K <sub>v</sub> 1.1	++	+++	+++	ISH, IMH, IMC, and CIMP in hippocampus or brain of rat, mouse, or gerbil.	[37–39]
K <sub>v</sub> 1.2	+	+	++		
K <sub>v</sub> 1.3	–	–	–	IMH in gerbil hippocampus.	[39]
K <sub>v</sub> 1.4	++	++	++	ISH, IMH, and IMC in hippocampus or brain of rat, mouse or gerbil.	[20, 38, 39]
K <sub>v</sub> 1.5	+	+	–	IMH or single-cell RT-PCR in gerbil or rat hippocampus.	[39, 40]
K <sub>v</sub> 1.6	++	+++	+++	IMH in gerbil hippocampus.	[39]
K <sub>v</sub> 2.1	++	++		Single-cell RT-PCR in rat hippocampus.	[17]
K <sub>v</sub> 3.1	++	+++	+++	Northern blot analysis and ISH in rat brain.	[17]
K <sub>v</sub> 3.2	+++	++	–		
K <sub>v</sub> 3.3	+	+	++		
K <sub>v</sub> 3.4	–	–	++		
K <sub>v</sub> 4.1	+	+	++	ISH in rat brain.	[18]
K <sub>v</sub> 4.2	+++	++	+++	ISH or IMH in rat or mouse brain.	[18, 41, 42]
K <sub>v</sub> 4.3	+	++	+++	ISH in rat brain.	[18, 42]
K <sub>v</sub> 7.2	+++	+++	+++	ISH and IMH in rat brain	
K <sub>v</sub> 7.3	+++	+++	+++		
K <sub>v</sub> 10.1	++	+++	++	ISH, real time PCR, or IMH in rat brain.	[19, 43]
K <sub>v</sub> 10.2	–	–	–		
K <sub>v</sub> 11.1	++	–	–	ISH and IMH in rat brain.	[19]
K <sub>v</sub> 11.2	–	–	–		
K <sub>v</sub> 11.3	+++	–	–		
K <sub>v</sub> 12.1	+	–	+		
K <sub>v</sub> 12.2	++	–	++		
K <sub>Ca</sub> 1.1	+++	+++	+++	ISH, WB analysis, IMH, IMF, IMC, or RLB in mouse or rat brain.	[21, 22, 44]
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.1	++	+++	++	ISH, IB analysis, IMH, or RLB in rat brain.	[23, 24]
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2	+++	+++	+	ISH, IB analysis, IMH, or RLB in rat brain.	[23–25]
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.3	+	++	+		
K <sub>2p</sub> 1.1	–	++	++	ISH in rat and mouse brain.	
K <sub>2p</sub> 2.1	++	+	+++	ISH, WB analysis, IMH, IMF, or IMC in rat or mouse brain.	[31]
K <sub>2p</sub> 3.1	++	++	++		
K <sub>2p</sub> 4.1	++	+++	+	ISH in rat and mouse brain.	[31]
K <sub>2p</sub> 9.1	++	++	+++		
K <sub>2p</sub> 10.1	–	++	+		
K <sub>ir</sub> 2.1	+	+	+++	ISH or IMH in mouse or rat brain.	[26–28]
K <sub>ir</sub> 2.2	++	+	++	ISH in mouse or rat brain.	[26, 27]
K <sub>ir</sub> 2.3	++	+	+++		
K <sub>ir</sub> 3.1	+++	++	+++	ISH or IMH in rat brain.	[27, 28]
K <sub>ir</sub> 3.2	+++	+++	+++	ISH or IMH in rat brain.	[27, 45]
K <sub>ir</sub> 3.3	+++	+++	+++	ISH in rat brain	[27]
K <sub>ir</sub> 3.4	+	++	+	WB analysis, IMH or ISH in rat or mouse brain.	[27, 45–47]
K <sub>ir</sub> 6.2	++	++	++	ISH, IMH, or IMF in rat or mouse brain.	[29, 48, 49]

The symbols indicate signal intensity as follows: – (not detected); + (weak); ++ (moderate); +++ (high); CA1, CA3, and DG (Dentate gyrus) are regions of hippocampal formation; Ref.: reference; RT-PCR means reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction; ISH is used for *in situ* hybridization; IMH for immunohistochemistry; IMC for immunocytochemistry; CIMP for coimmunoprecipitation; IMF for immunofluorescence; WB for western blot; IB for immune blot; RLB for radioligand binding.

TABLE 2: K<sup>+</sup> channels manipulations and their effects on experimental behavioral models for learning and memory.

Channels	Technique	Effect on channel	Behavioral test	Result	Ref.
K <sub>v</sub> , K <sub>Ca</sub> , and K <sub>ir</sub>	icv of minoxidil, pinacidil, TEA, glibenclamine, gliquidone, and cromakalim.	TEA blocks K <sub>v</sub> and K <sub>Ca</sub> . Glibenclamine block K <sub>ir</sub> . Minoxidil, pinacidil and cromakalim open K <sub>ir</sub>	PAT in mice	Minoxidil, pinacidil and cromakalim: (-) TEA, glibenclamine, gliquidone: (+)	[50]
	icv of antisense oligodeoxyribonucleotide to K <sub>v</sub> 1.1 mRNA.	Inhibition of channel expression	PAT in mice MWM in rats	(-) (-)	[51]
	K <sub>v</sub> 12.2 (BEC1) knockout mice	Inhibition of channel expression	MWM Y-maze test WFT	(+) (+) (+)	
K <sub>v</sub> 12.2	K <sub>v</sub> 12.2 OVER mice	Overexpression of channel in the forebrain	MWM Y-maze test WFT	(-) (-) (-)	[52]
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2	Systemic Infusion of EBIO or CyPPA.	EBIO activates SK channels. CyPPA activates K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 (SK2)/ K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.3 (SK3) subunits over K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.1 (SK1), and is more potent than EBIO.	ORT in mice	EBIO: (-) CyPPA: (-)	
			Contextual FCP in mice	EBIO: (0) CyPPA: (NT)	[53]
			Tone FCP in mice	EBIO: (0) CyPPA: (NT)	
K <sub>Ca</sub> 1.1	ih (CA1) of paxilline	Paxilline blocks the channel.	Trace eyeblink in rats	(-)	[54]

TABLE 2: Continued.

Channels	Technique	Effect on channel	Behavioral test	Result	Ref.
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2	SK2-OVER mice	Overexpression of K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 (SK2) protein and K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 mRNA	MWM	(-)	[55]
			Contextual FCP	(-)	
			Tone FCP	(-)	
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2	SK2-OVER mice	Overexpression of K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 (SK2) protein and K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 mRNA	Contextual FCP	(-)	[56]
K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.3	Doxycycline-induced conditional SK3 channel deficient (T/T) mice	Inhibition of channel expression	PAT	(0)	[57]
			MWM	(0)	
			ORT	(0)	
			Y-maze test	(-)	
			Five-trial inhibitory avoidance test	(-)	
K <sub>2p</sub> 10.1	Infusion of siRNA in the EC.	Knock down K <sub>2p</sub> 10.1 channels in the EC.	MWM in rats	(+)	[58]
K <sub>ir</sub> 3.4	K <sub>ir</sub> 3.4 (GIRK4) knockout mice	Inhibition of channel expression	PAT	(0)	[51]
			MWM	(-)	
K <sub>ir</sub> 6.2	ih (CA3) of diazoxide, or tolbutamide, or both.	Diazoxide opens the channel. Tolbutamide blocks the channel.	Diazoxide: (-)		[48]
			Tolbutamide: (0)		
			Both: (0)		
			Diazoxide, tolbutamide or both: (0)		
			Tone FCP in mice		
K <sub>ir</sub> 6.2 knockout mice	Inhibition of channel expression	Contextual FCP	(-)		
		Tone FCP	(-)		
		MWM	(0/-)		

(-): impairment; (+): improved; (0): neutral; (0/-): slight impairment; (NT): not tested; Ref.: reference; icv: intracerebroventricular injection; ih: intra-hippocampal injection; EC: entorhinal cortex; OVER: overexpressing; EBIO: 1-ethyl-2-benzimidazolinone; CyPPA: Cyclohexyl-[2-(3,5-dimethyl-pyrazol-1-yl)-6-methyl-pyrimidin-4-yl]-amine; siRNA: small interfering RNA; PAT is used for passive-avoidance test; MWM for Morris water maze test; WFT for Water-finding task; ORT for object recognition task; FCP for fear-conditioning paradigm.

blocking the translation of the mRNA of these channels. They found that this procedure worsened the passive avoidance in mice and spatial memory in rats (Table 2). Kourrich et al. [59], working with odor-discrimination tasks in rats, showed that levels of mRNA expression of  $K_v1.1$  channels in the hippocampus were positively correlated with associative learning.

On the other hand,  $K_v2.1$  channels appear to interfere negatively with learning and memory. Zhong et al. [40] suggested that memory deficits induced by scopolamine in rats may result from exacerbation of potassium currents in hippocampal pyramidal neurons as a consequence of increased mRNA expression of  $K_v2.1$  channels.

It has been shown that  $K_v12.2$  (BEC1) channels have preferential distribution in the forebrain, including the hippocampal and cortical regions [19, 60, 61]. The use of  $K_v12.2$  knockout and overexpression (OVER) mice made possible to verify that this KCN is negatively involved in cognitive function, since the  $K_v12.2$  knockout mice performed behavioral tasks related to working memory, reference memory, and attention better than their wild-type animals. In the OVER mice, on the other hand, the performance of those tasks was impaired [52] (Table 2).

Taken together, these studies strongly suggest that the brain KCNs and their modulation play an important role in the regulation of memory processes. Some hippocampal  $K_v$  ( $K_v1$ ,  $K_v2$  and  $K_v12$ ),  $K_{Ca}$  ( $K_{Ca1}$  e  $K_{Ca2}$ ), and  $K_{ir}$  ( $K_{ir3}$  e  $K_{ir6}$ ) channels seem to be particularly relevant. On this basis, the KCN blockers could be useful in investigation and the treatment of cognitive deficits.

### 3. Arthropod $K^+$ Channels Toxins

Arthropod venoms constitute a rich source of peptidyl KCN inhibitors (KTxs). There are two classes of inhibitory peptides based on their mechanism of action: (1) KCN blockers which bind to the outer vestibule and then blocking the ion conductance by the pore occlusion; (2) KCN gating modifiers which shift the channel opening to more positive potentials. Scorpion KCN blockers (scorpions KTxs), exemplified by charybdotoxin (ChTX) [62], and the peptide tertiapin, isolated from bee venom [63], act as pore blockers, while spider KTxs, such as SGTx1 [64], act as a gating modifier. In turn, apamin, another toxin from bee venom, possibly acts as a pore blocker, although residues of the extracellular S3/S4 loop of the  $K_{Ca2}$  (SK) channels also affect the apamin binding [65]. According to Lamy et al. [66], based on differences in binding affinity and potency of the blockage, apamin does not behave as a classical pore blocker, and probably the blocking effect occurs by an allosteric mechanism.

These KTxs show different arrangement of their three-dimensional (3D) structures. The folding types earlier found are  $\alpha\alpha$ ,  $\alpha\beta\beta$ , and  $\beta\alpha\beta\beta$  [67–69]. Despite the conformation differences, most of these peptides have common residues which promote the binding with the potassium-channel vestibule, such as a lysine residue distant from an aromatic residue for  $6.6 \pm 1.0 \text{ \AA}$  [70].

Arthropod toxins have been used as pharmacological tools to better understand the role of ion channels, as

most of them act in a high specific and potent way. Some of these toxins constitute unique blockers of certain ion channels, such as ergotoxin-1 (*Centruroides noxius*) [71], and BeKm-1 (*Mesobuthus eupeus*) [72] for  $K_v11.1$  (HERG), psalmotoxin (*Psalmopoeus cambridgei*) for ASIC1a channel [73], tertiapin-Q (*Apis mellifera*) for  $K_{ir3.1}$  (GIRK) [63], and Lq2 (*Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus*) for  $K_{ir1.1}$  (ROMK1) [74].

The scorpion KTxs are formed by 20–95 amino acid residues stabilized by two, three, or four disulfide bonds, making this structure relatively stable. The scorpion KTxs were originally classified into three families named  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  [75], all of them have the highly conserved secondary structural arrangement  $\alpha/\beta$  stabilized by cysteines (CS $\alpha/\beta$ ). More recently, scorpion KTxs presenting a different structural arrangement, with only two  $\alpha$ -helices stabilized by two disulfide bonds, CS $\alpha/\alpha$ , were described, and these peptides were named  $\kappa$ -KTxs [76–78]. Among the almost 190 scorpion KTxs described until now, the  $\alpha$ -KTx family, the largest one, contains more than 130 peptides thus far, classified in 20 subfamilies, based on their amino acid homology [75, 79].

Toxins from spider venom can play an important and complementary role in investigation of KCN cognitive function. Unlike most animal toxins obtained from snakes, bees, scorpions and sea anemones venom, which block mainly  $K_v1$  and  $K_v3$  channels, peptide toxins from spiders target  $K_v2$  and  $K_v4$  channels, which are expressed in the CNS and cardiovascular system of mammals (for review see [80]). Moreover, the venom spiders belonging to the Theraphosidae family represent a plentiful source of peptides that modify the gating of  $K_v$  channels [81]. Hanatoxin and seemingly others tarantula toxins shift channel opening to more depolarized voltages [81, 82] by stabilizing the resting conformation of the voltage sensor [83]. It has been suggested that these peptides interact with the voltage-sensor paddle within the lipid membrane [84–86].

The bee venom is composed of several classes of peptides, as well as enzymes and biogenic amines. Among the peptides, it can be emphasized the presence of the melittin [87], apamin [88], tertiapin [89], and mast cell degranulating peptide [90]. Certainly, in relation to neurotoxins, the apamin has greatly excelled, since this peptide has been considered a good pharmacological tool and it has provided important information in respect of the functioning of  $K^+$ -channels [91].

### 4. Arthropod KTxs in Learning and Memory

As already mentioned above, KCN classical blockers are not specific and cannot act at all KCNs. So these blockers have a major limitation as tools for studying the role of KCN in the CNS. An alternative to this obstacle is the use of KTxs from arthropods venom. In this section we report studies using these toxins to access the mechanisms of learning and memory in animals submitted to behavioral tests. Table 3 presents a summary of these works. Analyzing this table, we can see that the apamin is the most used KTx in tasks of learning and memory, as detailed below.

TABLE 3: Assembled data on the effect of the bee and scorpion venom KTx on the performance of animals in behavioral tests of learning and memory.

Species	Toxin	KCN target	Behavioral test	Result	Ref.
Scorpion	<i>Androctonus mauretanicus</i>	K <sub>v</sub> 1.1 and K <sub>v</sub> 1.3 blocker	Olfactory discrimination task in rats	Improvement	[92]
	<i>mauretanicus</i>				
	<i>Buthus tasmilus</i>	K <sub>Ca</sub> 1.1 blocker	Passive avoidance test in chicks	Impaired retention	[93]
	<i>Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus</i>	K <sub>v</sub> 1.3 and K <sub>Ca</sub> 1.1 blocker	Passive avoidance test in mice	Improvement	[50]
		K <sub>Ca</sub> 2.2 blocker	Radial arm maze in rat	No effect	[25]
Bee			Bar-pressing response in appetitively motivated mice	Improvement	[94]
			Object recognition task in rats	Improvement	[95]
			Habituation task in rats	Improvement	[96]
			Passive avoidance test in rats or mice	No effect	[96, 97]
			Passive avoidance test in mice	Improvement	[50, 98]
			Morris water maze in mice	Improvement	[97, 98]
			Morris water maze in rats	No effect	[98]
			Y-maze test in mice	No effect	[97]
			Radial arm maze test in mice or rats	Improvement	[25, 99]
			Visual discrimination in rats	No effect	[98]
			Olfactory discrimination task in rats	Improvement	[100]
			Olfactory associative task in rats	Improvement	[101]
			Tone fear-conditioning paradigm in mice	No effect	[53]
			T-maze test in rats	Improvement	[102]
			Passive avoidance task in chicks	Impaired retention	[103]

Ref.: reference.



**4.1. Apamin.** Apamin is a small peptide that corresponds to less than 2% of bee venom dry weight. Its amino acid sequence was described independently by two groups, revealing completely its primary structure [104]. Like many other peptide neurotoxins, apamin has high cysteine content and a high basicity, but apamin is different from most peptide toxins in its unusual ability to cross the blood brain barrier and act on the Central Nervous System [105]. This peptide is a polypeptide of 18 amino acids having a molecular weight of 2039 Da, with two disulfide bridges connecting position 1 with 11, and position 3 with 15 [106]. According to Vincent et al. [107], the most important part of the apamin sequence for neurotoxic activity appears to be the C-terminal region containing the two arginine residues, given that chemical modification of Arg13 and Arg14 eliminates toxicity ( $DL_{50}$  in mice). Assays with autoradiography of binding sites for apamin revealed that it binds preferentially to the hippocampus, to the habenular nucleus, and to the nucleus medialis septi [108].

Apamin is an antagonist of all three subtypes of small conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^{+}$ -channel,  $K_{Ca2}$  channels. However, this KTx showed subtype-specific affinity demonstrated by values of half maximal inhibition ( $IC_{50}$ ) and, dissociation constant (Kd) for  $K_{Ca2.1}$  (SK1),  $K_{Ca2.2}$  (SK2), and  $K_{Ca2.3}$  (SK3) ( $IC_{50}$  = 704pM, 27pM, 4nM and Kd 390pM, 4pM, 11pM, resp.) [34]. As a consequence of pharmacological blockage, apamin has been considered as a useful tool to investigate the physiological mechanisms involved in higher brain functions, especially cognitive processes or in the control of mood [98, 109].

This bee KTx facilitates spatial and nonspatial learning and improves memory performance in laboratory rodents, accelerating the acquisition of bar-pressing response in appetitively motivated mice [94]. In that report, when apamin was injected (dose 0.2 mg/kg, i.p.) 30 min before the acquisition session, it accelerated lever-press learning and the performance in a retention session 24 h later in BALB/mice. Results showed that immediate administration improved the retention of the lever-press task one day later [94]. Additionally, administration of the apamin in the acquisition of the lever-press task produced a stronger increase in early gene expression, *c-fos* and *c-jus*, in the CA1, CA3, and dentate gyrus as compared to trained saline-injected mice [110]. The similar pattern of immediate genes has been observed in the initial activation of neurons during the memory process [99].

Moreover, Deschaux et al. [95] showed that injection of apamin (0.4 mg/kg i.p.) before the training improved learning in an object recognition task in rats. Emphasizing, they found that rats injected with apamin before the first exploration session spent more time in exploring the new object than the familiar object at the second trial, when it took place 24 h after the first trial. Injection of apamin just after the first trial or before the second trial did not modify the difference in exploration time between the new and the familiar object. These results suggest that apamin could improve learning, but not consolidation or restitution of the information, in an object recognition task [95].

Also in 1997, Deschaux and Bizot [96] reported that, in the habituation task, apamin (0.4 mg/kg, i.p.) decreased

activity (distance travelled and rearing) on the restitution sessions only when it was injected before acquisition sessions, but not when injection took place just after the acquisition session or before the restitution session. In addition, the authors showed that in the passive avoidance test, apamin did not alter performance whenever the time of administration. According to Deschaux and Bizot [96], blockage of the apamin sensitive  $K_{Ca}$  channels improved the acquisition in nonstressful task, but not in a stressful situation in rats.

In the water maze spatial navigation, apamin (0.2 and 0.06 mg/kg, i.p.) administered 30 min before daily training improved the acquisition and reversal learning of septal-lesioned mice, but it did not improve learning and memory in a spontaneous alternation task in a Y-maze and in a passive avoidance task, and did not affect learning and memory in any of three tasks when intact mice were used as subjects [97]. Interestingly, apamin dose dependently (0.2–0.06 mg/Kg, i.p.) reversed the lesion-induced defect in the radial arm maze and in the water maze [99]. These results corroborated that blockage of  $K_{Ca}$  channels can alleviate the spatial reference memory and working memory defect induced by a damaged septohippocampal axis [99].

Van Der Staay et al. [98] make a comprehensive study using series of cognition tests with mice and rats from different strains. They used the standard version and a modified version of the Morris water escape task, the passive and active avoidance tasks, and the operant tasks in the Skinner box as cognitive tests, and the rat forced swimming test and the open-field test after cocaine administration as noncognitive tests. Results showed that apamin appeared to improve the cognitive performance of mice in two versions of the Morris water escape task and the passive avoidance task. However, inconsistency evidence was identified in rats. Moreover, apamin affected the general behavior of rats in the visual discrimination task, in the forced swimming test, and in the open field after cocaine administration [98].

In 2001, it was tested the effect of an i.c.v apamin (0.3 ng) injection on an olfactory associative task. Apamin did not modify the learning of the procedure side of the task or the learning of the odor-reward association. To specifically test reference memory, the rats were trained on a new odor-association problem using the same procedure (acquisition session), and they were tested for memory retention 24 h later. Apamin injected before or after the acquisition session improved retention of the valence of a new odor pair. Thus, the results indicate that the blockage of apamin-sensitive  $K_{Ca2}$  channels facilitates reference memory [100].

In order to investigate the effect of potassium channel subtypes on rats learning and memory, Mpari et al. [101] compare the effects of two blockers, apamin (0.3 ng) and lei-Dab7 (3 ng), a modified scorpion KTx that selectively blocks  $K_{Ca2.2}$  [111]. The results indicated that the blockage of  $K_{Ca2.2}$  and  $K_{Ca2.3}$  channels by apamin facilitates consolidation on new odor associations, using olfactory associative task in rats. However, lei-Dab7 remains without effect suggesting an involvement of  $K_{Ca2.3}$  channels for the integration of synaptic signaling and plasticity modulation involved in learning and memory processes [101].

In the same way, in a spatial radial-arm maze task with rats, it was shown that lei-Dab7 did not modify attention or memory. However, apamin (specific to  $K_{Ca2.2}$  and  $K_{Ca2.3}$  channels) improved reference memory and accelerated strategy changes from egocentric to allocentric. These results reinforce that  $K_{Ca2.3}$  blockage improves memory in rats [25].

Apamin is also able to facilitate the encoding of contextual fear memory during the limited 1 conditioned stimulus-unconditioned stimulus pairing protocol. It was shown that mice treated with apamin exhibited significantly greater freezing during the context test than did the saline-treated control [53].

More recently, the role of  $K_{Ca}$  in memory formation was explored in chicks trained on a single-trial discrimination avoidance task. Blockage of  $K_{Ca2}$  channels using apamin (1 nM, 0.02 ng/hem, i.c.) impaired long-term memory retention when administered between 10 min before, and 30 min after training [103].

Blockage of  $K_{Ca2}$  channels in the prefrontal cortex (PFC) by apamin also improves working memory performance [102] (Table 3). In prefrontal, visual, and somatosensory cortical pyramidal neurons,  $K_{Ca2}$  channels mediate a hyperpolarization following calcium-induced calcium release, triggered by activation of muscarinic [112, 113] or glutamate receptors [114]. The PFC is central for working memory, the aptitude to internally symbolize information without an external input, being fundamental for establishing conceptual thinking, and for language, for example. As  $K_{Ca2}$  channels play an important role in diminishing the excitability during synaptic transmission in the medial prefrontal cortex (mPFC), their blockage could potentiate synaptic transmission optimizing activity within the mPFC network [115, 116].

All these studies suggest that  $K_{Ca2}$  channels are involved in memory processes but only when the task does not implicate a spatial strategy or a stressful situation. Since apamin is effective in some of these examples, but fails to have an effect in others, it appears that apamin-sensitive channels affect only certain circuitries involved in memory processing. Van Der Staay et al. [98] discuss the use of apamin as a tool to study the role of potassium channels in learning and memory. They do not consider apamin a good tool, despite its high selectivity, because the peptide has a very narrow therapeutic window, since there is an apparent overlap between the doses that enhance cognition with those causing side effects. Even so, studies using apamin are of great importance for the understanding of these channels and their influence on processes of learning and memory.

**4.2. Charybdotoxin.** Charybdotoxin ( $\alpha$ -KTx 1.1, ChTX-Lq1, or ChTx-a), isolated from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* (Yellow scorpion) [117], is a potent selective inhibitor of high (large or big) conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated potassium channels ( $K_{Ca1.1}$ , BK, or maxi-K), as well as a  $K_v1.3$  channel [62]. In an autoradiographic study of rat brain it was demonstrated high levels of [ $^{125}I$ ]-charybdotoxin in white matter regions such as the lateral olfactory tract and fasciculus retroflexus, as well as in gray matter-containing

regions such as the zona incerta, medial geniculate, and superior colliculus [118].

Using a [ $^{14}C$ ]-2-deoxyglucose autoradiographic technique, it was shown that i.c.v. administration of charybdotoxin produced effect on glucose utilization in 21 brain regions predominantly limited to the hippocampus, limbic and motor structures, indicating that glucose utilization was altered within three pathways implicated within learning and memory processes, the septohippocampal pathway, Schaffer collaterals within the hippocampus, and the Papez circuit. These results suggested the possibility that handling of particular subtypes of  $K_v1$  channels by specific scorpion toxins in the hippocampus and related structures could alter cognitive processes without provoking large-scale changes in neural activity throughout the brain [119].

Ghelardini et al. [50] showed that the i.c.v. administration of charybdotoxin, 20 min before the training session in the mouse passive avoidance test, prevented the amnesia induced by potassium-channel openers (minoxidil and pinacidil). The amnesia in mice was produced by opening the  $K_{ATP}$  potassium channels, and it was reversed by blocking  $K_{ATP}$  potassium channels. Since the prevention of the amnesia induced by  $K_{ATP}$  potassium channel openers in the mouse passive-avoidance test is also obtained by blocking voltage-gated and calcium-activated channels, it is plausible to consider that more than one type of KCN appears to be involved in cognitive processes. It is worth mentioning that KCN blockers used by Ghelardini et al. [50] did not improve cognitive abilities when given alone, contrasting with the findings showing that apamin enhances memory in an object recognition task [95]. In fact, apamin, as it blocks  $K_{Ca}$  channels, affects learning rather than memory, an effect that is noticeable only in an object recognition task and that was observed after an interval of 24 h, when the control animals were not able to remember the exploration of the objects presented in the first session anymore [50].

**4.3. Kaliotoxin.** Kaliotoxin is a specific inhibitor of  $K_v1.1$  and  $K_v1.3$  isolated from the scorpion *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* [120]. The involvement of  $K_v1.1$  and  $K_v1.3$  in learning and memory processes was studied by using kaliotoxin in rats submitted to olfactory associative learning. Kaliotoxin (10 ng) improved learning but not information consolidation in the odor-reward training and increased the long-term retrieval of an odor-reward association tested by a reversal test 1 month after the odor-reward training. The reference memory was also tested by successive odor-pair training. When kaliotoxin was injected before the acquisition or retention session it improved performance. Nevertheless, when kaliotoxin was injected immediately after acquisition no effect was observed, suggesting that the blockage of  $K_v1.1$  or  $K_v1.3$  channels by kaliotoxin facilitates cognitive processes as learning, in particular in a reference representation [92].

**4.4. Iberiotoxin (IbTx).** IbTx, a toxin isolated from venom of the scorpion *Mesobuthus tamulus*, is a selective inhibitor of  $K_{Ca1.1}$  channels [121, 122]. These channels have been identified in brain regions that are related to cognition



such as the hippocampus [123], and they have also been implicated in memory processing.

In rabbits, it has been shown a strong relationship between classical conditioning and membrane excitability in Purkinje cells which persisted for at least 1 month [124]. In slices of cerebellar lobule, the administration of IbTX mimics the increases in membrane excitability related to conditioning, suggesting that classical conditioning is dependent upon the inhibition of  $K_{Ca1.1}$  channels [124].

In chicks submitted to passive avoidance task, Edwards and Rickard [93] showed a transient retention loss (40–70 min after training) associated with the central administration of 50 nM IbTX immediately after training.

**4.5. Spider KTxs.** Despite  $K_v2$  channels possibly contributing negatively to the mechanisms of learning and memory and spider venom being a rich source of gating modifiers of  $K_v2$  channels, no evaluation of the use of the spider KTxs as probes in cognitive processes was carried out so far. Only one study [125] tested the effect of a spider toxin in mice submitted to behavioral tests of memory, but this toxin was not a KTx.

## 5. Potassium Channels and Clinical Conditions Holding Cognitive Impairment

The studies presented above suggest that, at least in part, expression modification and conductance modulation of potassium channels are related to learning and memory processes. In some neurological dysfunctions, the relationship between KCN and cognitive aspects is also evident.

**5.1. Limbic Encephalitis.** Limbic encephalitis is characterized by disorientation, agitation, anxiety, depression, irritability, personality change, acute confusional state, hallucinations, complex partial and secondary generalized seizures, and, mainly, by impairment of short-term memory. Limbic encephalitis may have paraneoplastic or autoimmune origin (for reviews see [126, 127]).

Some cases of limbic encephalitis reinforce that KCNs are involved in learning and memory processes. Patients with this clinical condition and high plasma concentration (as reflected in the cerebrospinal fluid) of antibodies against voltage-dependent potassium channels (anti- $K_v$ ) had severe memory impairment. This cognitive function has a neuropsychological improvement after reducing serum levels of anti- $K_v$  by plasma exchange, immunosuppressive treatment or spontaneous fall [126, 128–130].

**5.2. Human-Immunodeficiency-Virus-Type-1 (HIV-1-) Associated Dementia (HAD).** HAD is a severe and debilitating form of HIV-1-associated neurocognitive disorders (HANDs). Over 40 million people worldwide are infected by HIV and 20–30% of them displayed symptoms of HAD. This disorder is characterized by cognitive deficits, motor disturbances, and behavioral abnormalities (for reviews see [131, 132]).

In individuals with HAD, the cognitive deficits could be result of  $K_v$  channels dysfunction [133, 134]. The brain cortex in individuals with HAD revealed overexpression of genes coding for KCNs that prolong afterhyperpolarization [135].

This participation of KCN in memory in the clinical condition caused by HIV-1 is supported by experimental results. Injection of HIV-1-infected human monocyte-derived macrophages into brain of immunodeficient mice, a model of human HIV-1-encephalitis (HIVE), impaired both long-term potentiation in hippocampus and spatial learning [136, 137]. Interestingly, these two damages are reversed when the HIVE mice received systemic administration of 4-AP, a KCN blocker aforementioned [138].

**5.3. Schizophrenia.** Schizophrenia is a neuropsychiatric disorder that affects approximately 0.8% of the world population. It is characterized by the presence of several symptoms that can be grouped into two categories: positive and negative symptoms as a function of normal behavior. Positive symptoms (in addition to normal behavior) include hallucinations, delusions, and disorganized thoughts. Negative signs (absent in normal behavior) consist of anhedonia and social withdrawal [139, 140].

Schizophrenia is associated with cognitive deficits [141]. Weickert et al. [142] found that 51% of 117 patients with schizophrenia and decline in intelligence quotient (IQ) also exhibited deficits of executive function, memory, and attention. Deficits of executive function and memory also were found in 71% of 73 individuals with schizophrenia that showed intellectually compromised or deteriorated [143].

This memory deficit observed in patients with schizophrenia may be also consequence of dysfunction of potassium channels. Early life exposure of rodents to maternal separation or social isolation is an animal model for schizophrenia [144]. Quan et al. [145] observed deficits in learning and memory in postweaning isolation-reared rats similar to individuals with schizophrenia. When compared to the housed rats, the isolated ones performed worse in probe trials and memory retention tests in Morris water maze. Interestingly, these researchers found that the amplitudes of hippocampal voltage-dependent transient potassium A-type ( $I_{(A)}$ ) currents were enhanced, and the steady inactivation curve of  $I_{(A)}$  currents was shifted towards positive potential by CSF of isolated rats. These  $K^+$  currents regulate action potential backpropagation and the induction of specific forms of synaptic plasticity, which is thought to underlie learning and memory [146, 147]. Therefore, Quan et al. [145] suggest that the mechanism by which early stressful experience leads to long-lasting consequences for spatial memory involves hippocampal potassium ion channel currents.

**5.4. Alzheimer's Disease.** Disorders that impair mental abilities are among the most feared result of aging. Among the kind of dementia, Alzheimer's disease (AD) represents the substantial majority of cases. AD is a progressive neurodegenerative disease characterized by loss of function

and death of neurons in various areas of the brain, leading to loss of mental functions such as memory and learning. The clinical diagnosis of AD is usually done when the memory loss speeds up, and other behavioral and cognitive symptoms appear, mainly because the failure in the capacity to remember ordinary facts of everyday life is easily dismissed as normal aging. The episodic memory is related to the hippocampus and the interconnections circuits between this area and cortex goes through changes during aging that are highly susceptible to neurodegeneration in AD. Unfortunately, by the time of AD diagnosis, prominent neuronal loss has already occurred in the entorhinal cortex (EC), the brain's interface between the hippocampal formation and neocortex. It is worthy to mention that neurodegeneration in EC does not occur in healthy brains undergoing aging, and as structural and functional measures of the EC, dentate gyrus and CA3 region circuit display a progressive change on the course to AD. This circuit could represent a suitable target to therapies aimed to modify the disease progression [148].

In addition to the decreased number of acetylcholine (ACh) receptors in the basal forebrain cholinergic neurons (BCFN),  $K_v3.1$  and  $K_v2.1$  have been implicated to AD. The use of immunohistochemical techniques showed that both KCNs are expressed in the BCFN [149]. BCFN voltage-gated KCNs regulate ACh release and may participate in BCFN neurodegeneration in the course of AD.

The accumulation of amyloid beta plaques is an AD characteristic. It seems that these plaques form calcium-conducting ion channels that cause rapid neurodegeneration due to calcium overload [150]. Toxins acting as  $Ca^{2+}$  channel blockers, such as  $\omega$ -agatoxin, attenuate the increases in  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration in isolated hippocampal nerve endings in the rat [149].

$I_{(A)}$  currents and the KCN behind these currents seem to have a role in AD. KCNs responsible for  $I_{(A)}$  currents have been involved in the onset of long-term potentiation in mammalian neurons, which is thought to underlie learning and memory [146, 147]. A change in the steady-state properties of the  $I_{(A)}$  current was showed in the amyloid-treated *Drosophila* cholinergic neurons which was sufficient to increase the threshold for the initiation of repetitive firing [151]. In this study, specific KTxs of the  $K_v4.2$  channel (phrixotoxin-2) and  $K_v1$  channel ( $\alpha$ -dendrotoxin) were used to determine which channels triggered these currents in the *Drosophila* model. It had been shown that treatment of cholinergic neurons with amyloid peptide altered the kinetics of the current and caused a decrease in neuronal viability [152].

Brain microglia and their KCNs are also important to AD. These cells are activated to produce a "respiratory burst," which produces reactive oxygen species (ROS) that cause the death of target cells in pathological states [153]. However, ROS generated by microglia contribute to the death of neurons in neurodegenerative conditions such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases, HIV and prion infection, and multiple sclerosis (reviewed by [154]).  $K_v1.3$  and  $K_{Ca}2$  and  $K_{Ca}4$  are required for the respiratory burst and ROS formation in cultured microglia, and the inhibition of  $K_v1.3$  by agitoxin-2 prevented neuronal killing by the microglia

[155]. Moreover, charybdotoxin and  $\alpha$ -dendrotoxin, all  $K_v1.3$  blockers, reduced neuron killing by microglia as shown by transwell cell-culture system [156].

**5.5. Multiple Sclerosis.** Multiple sclerosis (abbreviated MS, known as *disseminated sclerosis* or *encephalomyelitis disseminata*) is an inflammatory disease. In MS, the fatty myelin sheaths around the axons of the brain and spinal cord are destroyed, leading to demyelination and scarring as well as a broad spectrum of signs and symptoms such as muscular weakness, loss of coordination and speech, visual disturbances, and cognitive disability. MS is a chronic degenerative disease and the most common neurological cause of disability in young adults in industrialized societies [157]. The major disabling aspect of MS is the cognitive impairment, which is characterized primarily by memory loss, attention deficits, slowed information processing, and failure in executive function [158].

Some MS symptoms may be closely dependent upon changes in KCN [159].  $K_v1.1$  and  $K_v1.2$  are specifically found in paranodal regions of axons [160]. KCN blockers such as aminopyridines (APs) when applied *in vitro* to demyelinated axons are able to restore the conduction and also to potentiate synaptic transmission [161–164]. Because of that, much attention has been given to  $K_v$  blockers as a prospective agent for MS and other neuropathies treatments [165, 166].

Moreover, MS is a chronic inflammatory autoimmune disease and the central role of T lymphocytes, and their  $K_v1.3$  and  $K_{Ca}1.1$  channels, in its pathogenesis has been largely evidenced [167–169]. Kaliotoxin, which blocks the lymphocyte  $K_v1.3$  and the neuronal  $K_v1.1$  channels, ameliorates the symptoms of adoptive experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) in rats [170], a widely used model for the human MS disease [167]. It is worthy to mention that 4-AP has been used to manage some of the symptoms of MS [171, 172]. 4-AP was approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) on January 22, 2010 for the treatment of MS [173].

**5.6. Parkinson's Disease.** Parkinson's disease (PD) is a slowly progressive degenerative disorder of the CNS and is characterized by slowness or deficiency of movement (bradykinesia), rigidity, postural instability, and tremor primarily while at rest. The motor symptoms of PD result from the death of dopamine-generating cells in the substantia nigra, a region of the midbrain. In the early stage of the disease, the most obvious symptoms are those that are movement-related, such as shaking, rigidity, slowness of movement, and difficulty with walking and gait. With time, cognitive and behavioral problems may arise, commonly followed by dementia in the advanced phase of the disease. PD is more common in the elderly, with most cases occurring after the age of 50 (for review see [174, 175]).

Potassium channels have been implicated in the pathogenesis of PD.  $K_{ATP}$  channels comprised of  $K_{ir}6.2$  and Sur1 subunit are abundantly expressed in dopaminergic neurons of substantia nigra [176].  $K_{ATP}$  directly couple the

cellular metabolic state to membrane excitability. It has been shown that activity of the mitochondrial respiratory chain complex I (CXI, also known as NADH: ubiquinone reductase) is reduced in PD patients, strongly suggesting that metabolic stress is an important trigger factor for the PD neurodegeneration. Dopaminergic midbrain neurons express different types of  $K_{ATP}$  channels mediating their differential response to the inhibition of mitochondrial complex I [177]. The use of CXI inhibitor leads to the activation of SUR1/ $K_{ir}6.2$ -containing  $K_{ATP}$  channels, which results in a membrane hyperpolarization of the dopaminergic neuron that is associated with a complete loss of spontaneous activity [178]. Studies of dopaminergic midbrain neurons in the *weaver* mouse, a genetic mouse model of dopaminergic degeneration similar to that in PD [179], sustain the proposal of  $K_{ATP}$  channel activation as a neuroprotective strategy. Up to now, no  $K_{ATP}$  channel activators have been described from arthropod venom.

**5.7. Epilepsy.** The term epilepsy refers to a group of neurological disorders, clinically diverse and with multiple etiologies, characterized by paroxysmal brain discharges referred to as spontaneous recurrent seizures [180, 181]. Epilepsy is the second most common neurological disorder (after stroke), affecting 1-2% of the world's population [182]. Failure to treat epilepsy causes neurobiological, psychological, and social consequences for the patient [183], particularly cognitive impairment [184, 185]. Age of onset of epilepsy, type and duration of seizures, as well as the antiepileptic drug, therapy are strongly related to cognitive dysfunction present in the syndrome [186–188].

Clearly, ion channels are critical for regulating excitability and, contribute significantly to epilepsy pathophysiology. In a recent article, N'Gouemo [189] related that the loss-of-function large conductance  $K_{Ca}$  channels mutations contribute to neuronal hyperexcitability that can lead to temporal lobe epilepsy, tonic-clonic seizures and alcohol withdrawal seizures, and blockage of these channels can trigger seizures and status epilepticus.

Despite its availability, conventional and “new generation” antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) are commonly associated with side effects, which can vary in frequency and severity [190]. In addition, AEDs are ineffective in controlling seizures in one-third of patients (drug-resistant), reaching 70% in patients with temporal lobe epilepsy, which is the more frequent epilepsy in adults and it is characterized by degeneration of limbic structures (sclerotic hippocampus), directly involved in different memory processes and in their modulation [191–194]. It is noteworthy that cognitive deficits represent a serious neuropsychological problem in people suffering from temporal lobe epilepsy.

Several studies suggest that KCN may be an important new class of targets for anticonvulsant therapies [195, 196], especially for refractory epilepsy. New drugs that act on potassium channels have been provided and approved by the FDA and the European Union, for example, ezogabine (retigabine). *In vitro* studies indicate that ezogabine acts primarily by opening neuronal  $K_{v}7.2$ – $7.5$  channels [197].

## 6. Arthropod Toxins: Therapeutic and Study Tools

Given that the dysfunction of  $K^{+}$  channels has significant contribution in cognitive deficits of several neurological clinical conditions, the drugs that modulate their activity became important allies in the study and treatment of these pathologies. Due to the wide presence and diversity of potassium channels in the brain, these therapeutic agents need to be specific and potent. In this way, the toxins from arthropods turn out to be excellent candidates.

**6.1. Potential of KTxs as Pharmacological Tools.** KTxs that act on KCN responsible for  $I_{(A)}$  currents are of particular interest. These channels regulate firing frequency, spike initiation and waveform in excitable cells and may contribute to specialized functions, such as learning, memory, and behavior [146, 147]. According to the cell type and to the molecular heterogeneity,  $I_{(A)}$  currents exhibit a wide diversity of physiological properties. KCNs of subtype  $K_{v}4$  participate in the generation of  $I_{(A)}$  currents in the cerebellum granular cells [198], neostriatal cholinergic interneurons [199], and hippocampal interneurons [147].  $K_{v}2$  channels seem to be equally important for the existence of  $I_{(A)}$  currents in neocortical pyramidal neurons [200, 201]. Therefore KTxs that influence the  $I_{(A)}$  currents, or more specifically in  $K_{v}2$  and/or  $K_{v}4$  channels activity, become potential pharmacological tools for studying the participation of KCN in learning memory and its dysfunctions.

Many scorpion KTxs influence the  $I_{(A)}$  currents. Noxiustoxin (NTX), from the venom of the Mexican scorpion *Centruroides noxius* Hoffmann [202], and discrepin, toxin from the Venezuelan scorpion *Tityus discrepans* [203], belong to  $\alpha$ -KTx15 subfamily. Toxins of this subfamily are reported to affect the  $I_{(A)}$  currents [198]. Interesting, discrepin blocks irreversible  $K^{+}$ -channels of rat cerebellum neurons [203]. BmTX3 (systematic name  $\alpha$ -KTx 15.2) is toxin isolated from venom of Manchurian scorpion *Mesobuthus martensi* Karsch. This peptide blocked ( $K_d = 54$  nM) completely the  $I_{(A)}$  current of striatum neurons in culture, whereas the sustained  $K^{+}$  current was unaffected. The labeled synthetic toxin ( $^{125}$ I-sBmTX3) was found in the striatum, hippocampus, superior colliculus, and cerebellum in the adult rat brain [204]. BmTx3B (Martentoxin, systematic name  $\alpha$ -KTx 16.2) is another toxin isolated from *Mesobuthus martensi* Karsch. It was tested on two types of voltage-dependent potassium currents recorded from dissociated hippocampal neurons of neonatal rat in whole-cell voltage-clamp mode. BmTx3B selectively inhibited the delayed rectifier potassium current ( $I_{(K)}$ ), without affecting the  $I_{(A)}$  current [205]. Therefore these scorpions KTxs are candidates to become tools for the study of KCN in physiological and pathological mechanisms of learning and memory.

As mentioned above, the spider venom is a source of KTxs that act on  $K_{v}2$  and  $K_{v}4$  channels. The first spider toxins described as KCN blockers were the hanatoxins 1 and 2 (HaTx 1 and 2) of the theraphosidae spider *Grammostola spatulata* [206]. Despite the marked differences in their



primary sequence, both blocked the  $K_v2.1$  channel with  $K_d$  of 42 nM. HaTx block  $K_v1$  and  $K_v3$  channels, while the *shal*-related channel (type  $K_v4$ ) is sensitive to the toxin. The heteropodatoxins (HpTx 1–3), isolated from the venom of *Heteropoda venatoria* (Sparassidae), blocked the conductance of  $K_v4.2$  but not of  $K_v1.4$ , in a voltage-dependent manner. Other toxins that act on KCN were isolated from the venom of the Theraphosidae *Phrixotrichus auratus*. The phrixotoxins (Patx 1 and 2) specifically block  $K_v4.3$  and  $K_v4.2$  currents at nanomolar concentrations altering the gating properties of these channels by interacting with the voltage sensor. The subfamilies of *shaker* ( $K_v1$ ), *shab* ( $K_v2$ ), and *shaw* ( $K_v3$ ) were not inhibited by PaTx [207]. The stromatoxin1, ScTx1, isolated from tarantula *Stromatopelma calceata*, was the first high-affinity inhibitor described for the  $K_v2.2$  channel. ScTx1 also inhibited  $K_v2.1$  channels,  $K_v4.2$  and  $K_v2.1/K_v9.3$  heterodimer [208]. HmTx 1 and 2, peptides purified from the tarantula spider *Heteroscodra maculata*, inhibited potassium currents associated with subtypes  $K_v2$  [206]. Guangitoxin-1E (GxTX-1E) is a potent gating modifier peptide of  $K_v2$  channels isolated from the venom of the tarantula *Plesiophrictus guangxiensis* [209]. Other spider toxins targeting the  $K^+$ -channel voltage sensor include heteroscodratoxins (HmTx1,2), which target  $K_v2$  and  $K_v4$  channels [206]; TLTx1–3, which preferentially inhibit  $K_v4$  channels [210]; PhTx3-1, which inhibits the outward rectifier A-type  $K^+$ -channel [211]. SGTx1 (Kappa-theraphotoxin-Scgla) is a peptide toxin isolated from the venom of the aggressive African Theraphosidae *Scodra griseipes* that has been shown to inhibit outward  $K^+$  currents in rat cerebellar granule neurons [64]. Functionally, SGTx1 reversibly inhibits potassium currents in oocytes expressing  $K_v2.1$  channels and acts by shifting the activation of the channel to more depolarized voltages [212]. Finally, phrixotoxin-1, a peptide purified from the venom of the tarantula *Phrixotrichus auratus*, is a specific and potent blocker of  $K_v4.3$  [207]. So there are many spider KTx that are potential tools for the study of KCN in learning and memory and its dysfunction.

Toxins that act on large-conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$ -channels ( $K_{Ca1.1}$  or BK) and small-conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$  channel ( $K_{Ca2.1}$  or SK1,  $K_{Ca2.2}$  or SK2, and  $K_{Ca2.3}$  or SK3) are important too. Neuronal firing is also regulated by  $K_{Ca1.1}$  and  $K_{Ca2}$  which constitute an exclusive family of ion channels which combine intracellular chemical changes and electric signaling [213, 214].  $K_{Ca1.1}$  are homologous to  $K_v$  channel  $\alpha$ -subunits, but possess additional hydrophobic segments forming an extracellular N-terminal and a long intracellular C-terminal that holds one of the  $Ca^{2+}$ -binding sites [215]. It has been reported that  $K_{Ca}$  channels are involved in regulation of neocortex pyramidal cell excitability [216, 217]. Therefore KTx that influence the  $K_{Ca}$  channels become also potential pharmacological tools.

$K_{Ca}$  channels are blocked by many scorpion toxins. Martentoxin, purified from *Mesobuthus martensi* Karsch venom, is able to block  $K_{Ca1.1}$  currents in rat hippocampal neurons [218]. This KCN is also inhibited by slotoxin from *Centruroides noxius* [219] and noxiustoxin from *Centruroides noxius* [220]. Slotoxin is described not only as a potent and

selective blocker, but it also can differentially inhibit  $K_{Ca1.1}$  channels, depending on the presence of  $\beta$ -subunits [219] and on the  $\alpha$ -splice variant [221].  $K_{Ca2}$  channels are also blocked by different scorpion toxins. For example, there are scyllatoxin (leiurotoxin I) isolated from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* [222] and tamapin from *Mesobuthus tumulus* [223]. This last toxin blocks  $K_{Ca2}$  channels in pyramidal neurons of the hippocampus as well as in cell lines expressing distinct  $K_{Ca2}$  channel subunits, displaying a remarkable selectivity for  $K_{Ca2.2}$  ( $IC_{50} = 24$  pM) versus  $K_{Ca2.1}$  ( $\approx 1750$ -fold) and  $K_{Ca2.3}$  ( $\approx 70$ -fold) channels [223]. These data reinforce the potential of scorpion KTx as pharmacological tools.

As has been evident, multiple KCN participate in the regulation of cellular events behind the phenomena of learning and memory and their dysfunctions. Therefore, it is necessary a varied arsenal of pharmacological tools to investigate the role of each potassium channel in these cognitive processes. It also became clear that scorpions and spiders KTx can provide this diversity of tools.

## 7. Conclusion

The KCN are components of the mechanisms responsible for learning and memory. Its diversity and wide distribution in the brain make the action of KCN during the formation of learning and memory retrieval to be complex and variable. To investigate the role of each subtype of KCN in these phenomena, we need also a wide variety of pharmacological tools, specific and potent for KCN. The toxins from the venoms of arthropods can be such tools. These precise potassium channel toxins may not only have an important contribution to uncover the processes underlying learning and memory, but can also become therapeutic agents for many diseases and disorders of the CNS.

## Acknowledgments

This paper is financially supported by FAPDF (193.000.418/2008), CNPq (303003/2009-0 to EFS, 479873/2008-9 to MRM). C. D. C. Gati receives scholarship from CNPq.

## References

- [1] L. Nadel and O. Hardt, "Update on memory systems and processes," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, vol. 36, no. 1, pp. 251–273, 2011.
- [2] I. Morgado-Bernal, "Learning and memory consolidation: linking molecular and behavioral data," *Neuroscience*, vol. 176, pp. 12–19, 2011.
- [3] J. Kim and D. A. Hoffman, "Potassium channels: newly found players in synaptic plasticity," *Neuroscientist*, vol. 14, no. 3, pp. 276–286, 2008.
- [4] W. A. Coetzee, Y. Amarillo, J. Chiu et al., "Molecular diversity of  $K^+$  channels," *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, vol. 868, pp. 233–285, 1999.
- [5] S. I. V. Judge, P. J. Smith, P. E. Stewart, and C. T. Bever, "Potassium channel blockers and openers as CNS neurologic therapeutic agents," *Recent Patents on CNS Drug Discovery*, vol. 2, no. 3, pp. 200–228, 2007.

- [6] G. A. Gutman, K. G. Chandy, S. Grissmer et al., "International Union of Pharmacology. LIII. Nomenclature and molecular relationships of voltage-gated potassium channels," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 473–508, 2005.
- [7] A. D. Wei, G. A. Gutman, R. Aldrich, K. G. Chandy, S. Grissmer, and H. Wulff, "International Union of Pharmacology. LII. Nomenclature and molecular relationships of calcium-activated potassium channels," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 463–472, 2005.
- [8] Y. Kubo, J. P. Adelman, D. E. Clapham et al., "International union of pharmacology. LIV. Nomenclature and molecular relationships of inwardly rectifying potassium channels," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 509–526, 2005.
- [9] S. A. N. Goldstein, D. A. Bayliss, D. Kim, F. Lesage, L. D. Plant, and S. Rajan, "International union of pharmacology. LV. Nomenclature and molecular relationships of two-P potassium channels," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 527–540, 2005.
- [10] C. Miller, "An overview of the potassium channel family," *Genome biology*, vol. 1, no. 4, Article ID REVIEWS0004, 2000.
- [11] G. Yellen, "The voltage-gated potassium channels and their relatives," *Nature*, vol. 419, no. 6902, pp. 35–42, 2002.
- [12] K. L. Magleby, "Gating mechanism of BK (Slo1) channels: so near, yet so far," *Journal of General Physiology*, vol. 121, no. 2, pp. 81–96, 2003.
- [13] F. H. Yu, V. Yarov-Yarovoy, G. A. Gutman, and W. A. Catterall, "Overview of molecular relationships in the voltage-gated ion channel superfamily," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 387–395, 2005.
- [14] S. B. Long, E. B. Campbell, and R. MacKinnon, "Crystal structure of a mammalian voltage-dependent Shaker family K<sup>+</sup> channel," *Science*, vol. 309, no. 5736, pp. 897–903, 2005.
- [15] J. L. Moreland, A. Gramada, O. V. Buzko, Q. Zhang, and P. E. Bourne, "The Molecular Biology Toolkit (MBT): a modular platform for developing molecular visualization applications," *BMC Bioinformatics*, vol. 6, article no. 21, 2005.
- [16] C. Gu and J. Barry, "Function and mechanism of axonal targeting of voltage-sensitive potassium channels," *Progress in Neurobiology*, vol. 94, no. 2, pp. 115–132, 2011.
- [17] M. Weiser, E. Vega-Saenz De Miera, C. Kentros et al., "Differential expression of Shaw-related K<sup>+</sup> channels in the rat central nervous system," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 14, no. 3, pp. 949–972, 1994.
- [18] P. Serôdio and B. Rudy, "Differential expression of K<sub>v</sub>4 K<sup>+</sup> channel subunits mediating subthreshold transient K<sup>+</sup> (A-type) currents in rat brain," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 79, no. 2, pp. 1081–1091, 1998.
- [19] M. J. Saganich, E. Machado, and B. Rudy, "Differential expression of genes encoding subthreshold-operating voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channels in brain," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 21, no. 13, pp. 4609–4624, 2001.
- [20] R. Luján, C. D. C. De La Vega, E. D. Del Toro, J. J. Ballesta, M. Criado, and J. M. Juiz, "Immunohistochemical localization of the voltage-gated potassium channel subunit K<sub>v</sub>1.4 in the central nervous system of the adult rat," *Journal of Chemical Neuroanatomy*, vol. 26, no. 3, pp. 209–224, 2003.
- [21] H. G. Knaus, C. Schwarzer, R. O. A. Koch et al., "Distribution of high-conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels in rat brain: targeting to axons and nerve terminals," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 16, no. 3, pp. 955–963, 1996.
- [22] U. Sausbier, M. Sausbier, C. A. Sailer et al., "Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels of the BK-type in the mouse brain," *Histochemistry and Cell Biology*, vol. 125, no. 6, pp. 725–741, 2006.
- [23] M. Stocker and P. Pedarzani, "Differential distribution of three Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channel subunits, SK1, SK2, and SK3, in the adult rat central nervous system," *Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences*, vol. 15, no. 5, pp. 476–493, 2000.
- [24] C. A. Sailer, H. Hu, W. A. Kaufmann et al., "Regional differences in distribution and functional expression of small-conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels in rat brain," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 22, no. 22, pp. 9698–9707, 2002.
- [25] B. Mpari, L. Sreng, I. Regaya, and C. Mourre, "Small-conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels: Heterogeneous affinity in rat brain structures and cognitive modulation by specific blockers," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 589, no. 1–3, pp. 140–148, 2008.
- [26] Y. Horio, K. I. Morishige, N. Takahashi, and Y. Kurachi, "Differential distribution of classical inwardly rectifying potassium channel mRNAs in the brain: comparison of IRK2 with IRK1 and IRK3," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 379, no. 3, pp. 239–243, 1996.
- [27] C. Karschin, E. Dißmann, W. Stühmer, and A. Karschin, "IRK(1-3) and GIRK(1-4) inwardly rectifying K<sup>+</sup> channel mRNAs are differentially expressed in the adult rat brain," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 16, no. 11, pp. 3559–3570, 1996.
- [28] T. Miyashita and Y. Kubo, "Localization and developmental changes of the expression of two inward rectifying K<sup>+</sup>-channel proteins in the rat brain," *Brain Research*, vol. 750, no. 1-2, pp. 251–263, 1997.
- [29] M. Zhou, O. Tanaka, M. Suzuki et al., "Localization of pore-forming subunit of the ATP-sensitive K<sup>+</sup>-channel, K<sub>ir</sub>6.2, in rat brain neurons and glial cells," *Molecular Brain Research*, vol. 101, no. 1-2, pp. 23–32, 2002.
- [30] G. J. Hervieu, J. E. Cluderay, C. W. Gray et al., "Distribution and expression of TREK-1, a two-pore-domain potassium channel, in the adult rat CNS," *Neuroscience*, vol. 103, no. 4, pp. 899–919, 2001.
- [31] E. M. Talley, G. Solórzano, Q. Lei, D. Kim, and D. A. Bayliss, "CNS distribution of members of the two-pore-domain (KCNK) potassium channel family," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 21, no. 19, pp. 7491–7505, 2001.
- [32] A. Mathie, J. R. A. Wooltorton, and C. S. Watkins, "Voltage-activated potassium channels in mammalian neurons and their block by novel pharmacological agents," *General Pharmacology*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 13–24, 1998.
- [33] G. M. Lipkind and H. A. Fozzard, "A model of scorpion toxin binding to voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 158, no. 3, pp. 187–196, 1997.
- [34] M. Grunnet, B. S. Jensen, S. P. Olesen, and D. A. Klaerke, "Apamin interacts with all subtypes of cloned small-conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Pflügers Archiv European Journal of Physiology*, vol. 441, no. 4, pp. 544–550, 2001.
- [35] A. L. Harvey, K. N. Bradley, S. A. Cochran et al., "What can toxins tell us for drug discovery?" *Toxicon*, vol. 36, no. 11, pp. 1635–1640, 1998.
- [36] E. R. Kandel, I. Kupfermann, and S. Iversen, "Learning and memory," in *Principles of Neural Science*, E. R. Kandel, J. H. Schwartz, and T. M. Jessell, Eds., McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, USA, 2000.
- [37] M. M. Monaghan, J. S. Trimmer, and K. J. Rhodes, "Experimental localization of K<sub>v</sub>1 family voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channel  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  subunits in rat hippocampal formation," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 21, no. 16, pp. 5973–5983, 2001.
- [38] H. Wang, D. O. Kunkel, P. A. Schwartzkroin, and B. L. Tempel, "Localization of K<sub>v</sub>1.1 and K<sub>v</sub>1.2, two K<sup>+</sup> channel proteins, to synaptic terminals, somata, and dendrites in the

- mouse brain," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 14, no. 8, pp. 4588–4599, 1994.
- [39] K. H. Park, Y. H. Chung, C. M. Shin et al., "Immunohistochemical study on the distribution of the voltage-gated potassium channels in the gerbil hippocampus," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 298, no. 1, pp. 29–32, 2001.
  - [40] C. B. Zhong, Y. P. Pan, X. Y. Tong, X. H. Xu, and X. L. Wang, "Delayed rectifier potassium currents and Kv2.1 mRNA increase in hippocampal neurons of scopolamine-induced memory-deficient rats," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 373, no. 2, pp. 99–104, 2005.
  - [41] A. W. Varga, A. E. Anderson, J. P. Adams, H. Vogel, and J. D. Sweatt, "Input-specific immunolocalization of differentially phosphorylated Kv4.2 in the mouse brain," *Learning and Memory*, vol. 7, no. 5, pp. 321–332, 2000.
  - [42] M. L. Tsaour, C. C. Chou, Y. H. Shih, and H. L. Wang, "Cloning, expression and CNS distribution of Kv4.3, an A-type K<sup>+</sup> channel  $\alpha$  subunit," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 400, no. 2, pp. 215–220, 1997.
  - [43] S. Martin, C. Lino de Oliveira, F. Mello de Queiroz, L. A. Pardo, W. Stühmer, and E. Del Bel, "Eag1 potassium channel immunohistochemistry in the CNS of adult rat and selected regions of human brain," *Neuroscience*, vol. 155, no. 3, pp. 833–844, 2008.
  - [44] C. A. Sailer, W. A. Kaufmann, M. Kogler et al., "Immunolocalization of BK channels in hippocampal pyramidal neurons," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 24, no. 2, pp. 442–454, 2006.
  - [45] G. Murer, C. Adelbrecht, I. Lauritzen et al., "An immunocytochemical study on the distribution of two G-protein-gated inward rectifier potassium channels (Girk2 and Girk4) in the adult rat brain," *Neuroscience*, vol. 80, no. 2, pp. 345–357, 1997.
  - [46] K. Wickman, C. Karschin, A. Karschin, M. R. Picciotto, and D. E. Clapham, "Brain localization and behavioral impact of the G-protein-gated K<sup>+</sup> channel subunit GIRK4," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 20, no. 15, pp. 5608–5615, 2000.
  - [47] M. Iizuka, I. Tsunenari, Y. Momota, I. Akiba, and T. Kono, "Localization of a G-protein-coupled inwardly rectifying K<sup>+</sup> channel, CIR, in the rat brain," *Neuroscience*, vol. 77, no. 1, pp. 1–13, 1997.
  - [48] A. Betourne, A. M. Bertholet, E. Labroue et al., "Involvement of hippocampal CA3 K<sub>ATP</sub> channels in contextual memory," *Neuropharmacology*, vol. 56, no. 3, pp. 615–625, 2009.
  - [49] C. Karschin, C. Ecke, F. M. Ashcroft, and A. Karschin, "Overlapping distribution of K<sub>ATP</sub> channel-forming Kir6.2 subunit and the sulfonylurea receptor SUR1 in rodent brain," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 401, no. 1, pp. 59–64, 1997.
  - [50] C. Ghelardini, N. Galeotti, and A. Bartolini, "Influence of potassium channel modulators on cognitive processes in mice," *British Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 123, no. 6, pp. 1079–1084, 1998.
  - [51] N. Meiri, C. Ghelardini, G. Tesco et al., "Reversible antisense inhibition of Shaker-like Kv1.1 potassium channel expression impairs associative memory in mouse and rat," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 94, no. 9, pp. 4430–4434, 1997.
  - [52] A. Miyake, S. Takahashi, Y. Nakamura et al., "Disruption of the ether-à-go-go K<sup>+</sup> channel gene BEC1/KCNH3 enhances cognitive function," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 29, no. 46, pp. 14637–14645, 2009.
  - [53] K. A. Vick, M. Guidi, and R. W. Stackman, "In vivo pharmacological manipulation of small conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels influences motor behavior, object memory and fear conditioning," *Neuropharmacology*, vol. 58, no. 3, pp. 650–659, 2010.
  - [54] E. A. Matthews and J. F. Disterhoft, "Blocking the BK channel impedes acquisition of trace eyeblink conditioning," *Learning and Memory*, vol. 16, no. 2, pp. 106–109, 2009.
  - [55] R. S. Hammond, C. T. Bond, T. Strassmaier et al., "Small-conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channel type 2 (SK2) modulates hippocampal learning, memory, and synaptic plasticity," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 26, no. 6, pp. 1844–1853, 2006.
  - [56] R. W. Stackman Jr., C. T. Bond, and J. P. Adelman, "Contextual memory deficits observed in mice overexpressing small conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> type 2 (K<sub>Ca</sub>2.2, SK2) channels are caused by an encoding deficit," *Learning and Memory*, vol. 15, no. 4, pp. 208–213, 2008.
  - [57] J. P. R. Jacobsen, J. P. Redrobe, H. H. Hansen et al., "Selective cognitive deficits and reduced hippocampal brain-derived neurotrophic factor mRNA expression in small-conductance calcium-activated K<sup>+</sup> channel deficient mice," *Neuroscience*, vol. 163, no. 1, pp. 73–81, 2009.
  - [58] P. Y. Deng, Z. Xiao, C. Yang et al., "GABA<sub>B</sub> receptor activation inhibits neuronal excitability and spatial learning in the entorhinal cortex by activating TREK-2 K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Neuron*, vol. 63, no. 2, pp. 230–243, 2009.
  - [59] S. Kourrich, C. Manrique, P. Salin, and C. Murre, "Transient hippocampal down-regulation of K<sub>v</sub>1.1 subunit mRNA during associative learning in rats," *Learning and Memory*, vol. 12, no. 5, pp. 511–519, 2005.
  - [60] B. Engeland, A. Neu, J. Ludwig, J. Roeper, and O. Pongs, "Cloning and functional expression of rat ether-a-go-go-like K<sup>+</sup> channel genes," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 513, no. 3, pp. 647–654, 1998.
  - [61] A. Miyake, S. Mochizuki, H. Yokoi, M. Kohda, and K. Furuchi, "New ether-a-go-go K<sup>+</sup> channel family members localized in human telencephalon," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 274, no. 35, pp. 25018–25025, 1999.
  - [62] G. Gimenez-Gallego, M. A. Navia, J. P. Reuben, G. M. Katz, G. J. Kaczorowski, and M. L. Garcia, "Purification, sequence, and model structure of charybdotoxin, a potent selective inhibitor of calcium-activated potassium channels," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 85, no. 10, pp. 3329–3333, 1988.
  - [63] W. Jin and Z. Lu, "A novel high-affinity inhibitor for inward-rectifier K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Biochemistry*, vol. 37, no. 38, pp. 13291–13299, 1998.
  - [64] L. Marvin, E. De, P. Cosette, J. Gagnon, G. Molle, and C. Lange, "Isolation, amino acid sequence and functional assays of SGTx1. The first toxin purified from the venom of the spider *Scodra griseipes*," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 265, no. 2, pp. 572–579, 1999.
  - [65] A. Nolting, T. Ferraro, D. D'Hoedt, and M. Stocker, "An amino acid outside the pore region influences apamin sensitivity in small conductance Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 282, no. 6, pp. 3478–3486, 2007.
  - [66] C. Lamy, S. J. Goodchild, K. L. Weatherall et al., "Allosteric block of K<sub>Ca</sub>2 channels by apamin," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 285, no. 35, pp. 27067–27077, 2010.
  - [67] B. Jouirou, S. Mouhat, N. Andreotti, M. De Waard, and J. M. Sabatier, "Toxin determinants required for interaction with voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channels," *Toxicon*, vol. 43, no. 8, pp. 909–914, 2004.
  - [68] S. Mouhat, B. Jouirou, A. Mosbah, M. De Waard, and J. M. Sabatier, "Diversity of folds in animal toxins acting on ion



- channels," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 378, no. 3, pp. 717–726, 2004.
- [69] S. Mouhat, N. Andreotti, B. Jouriou, and J. M. Sabatier, "Animal toxins acting on voltage-gated potassium channels," *Current Pharmaceutical Design*, vol. 14, no. 24, pp. 2503–2518, 2008.
- [70] M. Dauplais, A. Lecoq, J. Song et al., "On the convergent evolution of animal toxins. Conservation of a diad of functional residues in potassium channel-blocking toxins with unrelated structures," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 272, no. 7, pp. 4302–4309, 1997.
- [71] G. B. Gurrola, B. Rosati, M. Rocchetti et al., "A toxin to nervous, cardiac, and endocrine ERG  $K^+$  channels isolated from *Centruroides noxius* scorpion venom," *FASEB Journal*, vol. 13, no. 8, pp. 953–962, 1999.
- [72] Y. V. Korolkova, S. A. Kozlov, A. V. Lipkin et al., "An ERG Channel Inhibitor from the Scorpion *Buthus eupeus*," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 13, pp. 9868–9876, 2001.
- [73] P. Escoubas, C. Bernard, G. Lambeau, M. Lazdunski, and H. Darbon, "Recombinant production and solution structure of PcTx1, the specific peptide inhibitor of ASIC1a proton-gated cation channels," *Protein Science*, vol. 12, no. 7, pp. 1332–1343, 2003.
- [74] Z. Lu and R. MacKinnon, "Purification, characterization, and synthesis of an inward-rectifier  $K^+$  channel inhibitor from scorpion venom," *Biochemistry*, vol. 36, no. 23, pp. 6936–6940, 1997.
- [75] J. Tytgat, K. G. Chandy, M. L. Garcia et al., "A unified nomenclature for short-chain peptides isolated from scorpion venoms:  $\alpha$ -KTx molecular subfamilies," *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*, vol. 20, no. 11, pp. 444–447, 1999.
- [76] K. N. Srinivasan, V. Sivaraja, I. Huys et al., "kappa-Hefutoxin1, a novel toxin from the scorpion *Heterometrus fulvipes* with unique structure and function. Importance of the functional diad in potassium channel selectivity," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 277, no. 33, pp. 30040–30047, 2002.
- [77] B. Chagot, C. Pimentel, L. Dai et al., "An unusual fold for potassium channel blockers: NMR structure of three toxins from the scorpion *Opisthacanthus madagascariensis*," *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 388, no. 1, pp. 263–271, 2005.
- [78] T. S. Camargos, R. Restano-Cassulini, L. D. Possani et al., "The new kappa-KTx 2.5 from the scorpion *Opisthacanthus cayaporum*," *Peptides*, vol. 32, no. 7, pp. 1509–1517, 2011.
- [79] R. C. Rodríguez De La Vega and L. D. Possani, "Current views on scorpion toxins specific for  $K^+$ -channels," *Toxicon*, vol. 43, no. 8, pp. 865–875, 2004.
- [80] G. Estrada, E. Villegas, and G. Corzo, "Spider venoms: a rich source of acylpolyamines and peptides as new leads for CNS drugs," *Natural Product Reports*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 145–161, 2007.
- [81] K. J. Swartz, "Tarantula toxins interacting with voltage sensors in potassium channels," *Toxicon*, vol. 49, no. 2, pp. 213–230, 2007.
- [82] K. J. Swartz and R. MacKinnon, "Hanatoxin modifies the gating of a voltage-dependent  $K^+$  channel through multiple binding sites," *Neuron*, vol. 18, no. 4, pp. 665–673, 1997.
- [83] H. C. Lee, J. M. Wang, and K. J. Swartz, "Interaction between extracellular hanatoxin and the resting conformation of the voltage-sensor paddle in  $K_v$  channels," *Neuron*, vol. 40, no. 3, pp. 527–536, 2003.
- [84] S. Y. Lee and R. MacKinnon, "A membrane-access mechanism of ion channel inhibition by voltage sensor toxins from spider venom," *Nature*, vol. 430, no. 6996, pp. 232–235, 2004.
- [85] L. R. Phillips, M. Milescu, Y. Li-Smerin, J. A. Mindell, J. I. Kim, and K. J. Swartz, "Voltage-sensor activation with a tarantula toxin as cargo," *Nature*, vol. 436, no. 7052, pp. 857–860, 2005.
- [86] M. Milescu, J. Vobecky, S. H. Roh et al., "Tarantula toxins interact with voltage sensors within lipid membranes," *Journal of General Physiology*, vol. 130, no. 5, pp. 497–511, 2007.
- [87] H. Raghuraman and A. Chattopadhyay, "Melittin: a membrane-active peptide with diverse functions," *Bioscience Reports*, vol. 27, no. 4–5, pp. 189–223, 2007.
- [88] E. Habermann, "Apamin," *Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, vol. 25, no. 2, pp. 255–270, 1984.
- [89] X. Xu and J. W. Nelson, "Solution structure of tertiapin determined using nuclear magnetic resonance and distance geometry," *Proteins: Structure, Function and Genetics*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 124–137, 1993.
- [90] E. M. Dotimas, K. R. Hamid, R. C. Hider, and U. Ragnarsson, "Isolation and structure analysis of bee venom mast cell degranulating peptide," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 911, no. 3, pp. 285–293, 1987.
- [91] K. L. Weatherall, S. J. Goodchild, D. E. Jane, and N. V. Marrion, "Small conductance calcium-activated potassium channels: from structure to function," *Progress in Neurobiology*, vol. 91, no. 3, pp. 242–255, 2010.
- [92] S. Kourrich, C. Mourre, and B. Soumireu-Mourat, "Kaliotoxin, a  $K_v1.1$  and  $K_v1.3$  channel blocker, improves associative learning in rats," *Behavioural Brain Research*, vol. 120, no. 1, pp. 35–46, 2001.
- [93] T. M. Edwards and N. S. Rickard, "Pharmaco-behavioural evidence indicating a complex role for ryanodine receptor calcium release channels in memory processing for a passive avoidance task," *Neurobiology of Learning and Memory*, vol. 86, no. 1, pp. 1–8, 2006.
- [94] C. Messier, C. Mourre, B. Bontempi, J. Sif, M. Lazdunski, and C. Destrade, "Effect of apamin, a toxin that inhibits  $Ca^{2+}$ -dependent  $K^+$  channels, on learning and memory processes," *Brain Research*, vol. 551, no. 1–2, pp. 322–326, 1991.
- [95] O. Deschaux, J. C. Bizot, and M. Goyffon, "Apamin improves learning in an object recognition task in rats," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 222, no. 3, pp. 159–162, 1997.
- [96] O. Deschaux and J. C. Bizot, "Effect of apamin, a selective blocker of  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$ -channel, on habituation and passive avoidance responses in rats," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 227, no. 1, pp. 57–60, 1997.
- [97] S. Ikonen, B. Schmidt, and P. Riekkinen, "Apamin improves spatial navigation in medial septal-lesioned mice," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 347, no. 1, pp. 13–21, 1998.
- [98] F. J. Van Der Staay, R. J. Fanelli, A. Blokland, and B. H. Schmidt, "Behavioral effects of apamin, a selective inhibitor of the  $SK_{Ca}$ -channel, in mice and rats," *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, vol. 23, no. 8, pp. 1087–1110, 1999.
- [99] S. Ikonen and P. Riekkinen, "Effects of apamin on memory processing of hippocampal-lesioned mice," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 382, no. 3, pp. 151–156, 1999.
- [100] C. Fournier, S. Kourrich, B. Soumireu-Mourat, and C. Mourre, "Apamin improves reference memory but not procedural memory in rats by blocking small conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$  channels in an olfactory discrimination task," *Behavioural Brain Research*, vol. 121, no. 1–2, pp. 81–93, 2001.

- [101] B. Mpari, I. Regaya, G. Escoffier, and C. Mourre, "Differential effects of two blockers of small conductance  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^{+}$  channels, apamin and lei-Dab7, on learning and memory in rats," *Journal of integrative neuroscience*, vol. 4, no. 3, pp. 381–396, 2005.
- [102] A. R. Brennan, B. Dolinsky, M. A. T. Vu, M. Stanley, M. F. Yeckel, and A. F. T. Arnsten, "Blockade of  $\text{IP}_3$ -mediated SK channel signaling in the rat medial prefrontal cortex improves spatial working memory," *Learning and Memory*, vol. 15, no. 3, pp. 93–96, 2008.
- [103] K. D. Baker, T. M. Edwards, and N. S. Rickard, "Blocking SK channels impairs long-term memory formation in young chicks," *Behavioural Brain Research*, vol. 216, no. 1, pp. 458–462, 2011.
- [104] P. Haux, H. Sawerthal, and E. Habermann, "Sequence analysis of bee venom neurotoxin (apamine) from its tryptic and chymotryptic cleavage products," *Hoppe-Seyler's Zeitschrift für Physiologische Chemie*, vol. 348, no. 6, pp. 737–738, 1967.
- [105] E. Habermann, "Bee and wasp venoms," *Science*, vol. 177, no. 4046, pp. 314–322, 1972.
- [106] G. L. Callewaert, R. Shipolini, and C. A. Vernon, "The disulphide bridges of apamin," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 1, no. 2, pp. 111–113, 1968.
- [107] J. P. Vincent, H. Schweitz, and M. Lazdunski, "Structure-function relationships and site of action of apamin, a neurotoxic polypeptide of bee venom with an action on the central nervous system," *Biochemistry*, vol. 14, no. 11, pp. 2521–2525, 1975.
- [108] E. Habermann and D. Cheng Raude, "Central neurotoxicity of apamin, crotamin, phospholipase A and  $\alpha$  amanitin," *Toxicon*, vol. 13, no. 6, pp. 465–473, 1975.
- [109] M. L. Garcia, A. Galvez, M. Garcia-Calvo, V. F. King, J. Vazquez, and G. J. Kaczorowski, "Use of toxins to study potassium channels," *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes*, vol. 23, no. 4, pp. 615–646, 1991.
- [110] C. Heurteaux, C. Messier, C. Destrade, and M. Lazdunski, "Memory processing and apamin induce immediately early gene expression in mouse brain," *Molecular Brain Research*, vol. 18, no. 1-2, pp. 17–22, 1993.
- [111] V. G. Shakkottai, I. Regaya, H. Wulff et al., "Design and characterization of a highly selective peptide inhibitor of the small conductance calcium-activated  $\text{K}^{+}$  channel,  $\text{SK}_{\text{Ca}2}$ ," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 46, pp. 43145–43151, 2001.
- [112] S. I. Yamada, H. Takechi, I. Kanchiku, T. Kita, and N. Kato, "Small-conductance  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent  $\text{K}^{+}$  channels are the target of spike-induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in a feedback regulation of pyramidal cell excitability," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 91, no. 5, pp. 2322–2329, 2004.
- [113] A. T. Gulledge, S. B. Park, Y. Kawaguchi, and G. J. Stuart, "Heterogeneity of phasic cholinergic signaling in neocortical neurons," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 97, no. 3, pp. 2215–2229, 2007.
- [114] A. M. Hagenston, J. S. Fitzpatrick, and M. F. Yeckel, "MGLuR-mediated calcium waves that invade the soma regulate firing in layer V medial prefrontal cortical pyramidal neurons," *Cerebral Cortex*, vol. 18, no. 2, pp. 407–423, 2008.
- [115] E. S. L. Faber and P. Sah, "Functions of SK channels in central neurons," *Clinical and Experimental Pharmacology and Physiology*, vol. 34, no. 10, pp. 1077–1083, 2007.
- [116] E. S. L. Faber, "Functional interplay between NMDA receptors, SK channels and voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels regulates synaptic excitability in the medial prefrontal cortex," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 588, no. 8, pp. 1281–1292, 2010.
- [117] C. Miller, E. Moczydlowski, R. Latorre, and M. Phillips, "Charybdotoxin a protein inhibitor of single  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^{+}$  channels from mammalian skeletal muscle," *Nature*, vol. 313, no. 6000, pp. 316–318, 1985.
- [118] D. R. Gehlert and S. L. Gackenhimer, "Comparison of the distribution of binding sites for the potassium channel ligands [ $^{125}\text{I}$ ]apamin, [ $^{125}\text{I}$ ]charybdotoxin and [ $^{125}\text{I}$ ]iodoglyburide in the rat brain," *Neuroscience*, vol. 52, no. 1, pp. 191–205, 1993.
- [119] S. M. Cochran, A. L. Harvey, and J. A. Pratt, "Regionally selective alterations in local cerebral glucose utilization evoked by charybdotoxin, a blocker of central voltage-activated  $\text{K}^{+}$ -channels," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 14, no. 9, pp. 1455–1463, 2001.
- [120] M. Crest, G. Jacquet, M. Gola et al., "Kaliotoxin, a novel peptidyl inhibitor of neuronal BK-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^{+}$  channels characterized from *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 267, no. 3, pp. 1640–1647, 1992.
- [121] A. Galvez, G. Gimenez-Gallego, J. P. Reuben et al., "Purification and characterization of a unique, potent, peptidyl probe for the high conductance calcium-activated potassium channel from venom of the scorpion *Buthus tamulus*," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 265, no. 19, pp. 11083–11090, 1990.
- [122] K. M. Giangiacomo, M. L. Garcia, and O. B. McManus, "Mechanism of iberiotoxin block of the large-conductance calcium-activated potassium channel from bovine aortic smooth muscle," *Biochemistry*, vol. 31, no. 29, pp. 6719–6727, 1992.
- [123] L. R. Shao, R. Halvorsrud, L. Borg-Graham, and J. F. Storm, "The role of BK-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent  $\text{K}^{+}$  channels in spike broadening during repetitive firing in rat hippocampal pyramidal cells," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 521, no. 1, pp. 135–146, 1999.
- [124] B. G. Schreurs, P. A. Gusev, D. Tomsic, D. L. Alkon, and T. Shi, "Intracellular correlates of acquisition and long-term memory of classical conditioning in Purkinje cell dendrites in slices of rabbit cerebellar lobule HVI," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 18, no. 14, pp. 5498–5507, 1998.
- [125] T. Himi, H. Saito, and T. Nakajima, "Spider toxin (JSTX-3) inhibits the memory retrieval of passive avoidance tests," *Journal of Neural Transmission. General Section*, vol. 80, no. 1, pp. 79–89, 1990.
- [126] A. Vincent, C. Buckley, J. M. Schott et al., "Potassium channel antibody-associated encephalopathy: a potentially immunotherapy-responsive form of limbic encephalitis," *Brain*, vol. 127, no. 3, pp. 701–712, 2004.
- [127] N. E. Anderson and P. A. Barber, "Limbic encephalitis—a review," *Journal of Clinical Neuroscience*, vol. 15, no. 9, pp. 961–971, 2008.
- [128] C. Buckley, J. Oger, L. Clover et al., "Potassium channel antibodies in two patients with reversible limbic encephalitis," *Annals of Neurology*, vol. 50, no. 1, pp. 73–78, 2001.
- [129] T. Harrower, T. Foltynie, L. Kartsounis, R. N. De Silva, and J. R. Hodges, "A case of voltage-gated potassium channel antibody-related limbic encephalitis," *Nature Clinical Practice Neurology*, vol. 2, no. 6, pp. 339–343, 2006.
- [130] L. D. Kartsounis and R. de Silva, "Unusual amnesia in a patient with VGKC-Ab limbic encephalitis: a case study," *Cortex*, vol. 47, no. 4, pp. 451–459, 2011.
- [131] M. Kaul, J. Zheng, S. Okamoto, H. E. Gendelman, and S. A. Lipton, "HIV-1 infection and AIDS: consequences for the



- central nervous system," *Cell Death and Differentiation*, vol. 12, no. 1, pp. 878–892, 2005.
- [132] K. A. Lindl, D. R. Marks, D. L. Kolson, and K. L. Jordan-Sciutto, "HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder: pathogenesis and therapeutic opportunities," *Journal of Neuroimmune Pharmacology*, vol. 5, no. 3, pp. 294–309, 2010.
- [133] J. P. Keblesh, B. C. Reiner, J. Liu, and H. Xiong, "Pathogenesis of human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1)-associated dementia: role of voltage-gated potassium channels," *Retrovirology*, vol. 2, pp. 1–10, 2008.
- [134] J. Keblesh, D. Hu, and H. Xiong, "Voltage-gated potassium channels in human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1)-associated neurocognitive disorders," *Journal of Neuroimmune Pharmacology*, vol. 4, no. 1, pp. 60–70, 2009.
- [135] B. B. Gelman, V. M. Soukup, K. W. Schuenke et al., "Acquired neuronal channelopathies in HIV-associated dementia," *Journal of Neuroimmunology*, vol. 157, no. 1–2, pp. 111–119, 2004.
- [136] W. E. Zink, E. Anderson, J. Boyle et al., "Impaired spatial cognition and synaptic potentiation in a murine model of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 encephalitis," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 22, no. 6, pp. 2096–2105, 2002.
- [137] E. R. Anderson, J. Boyle, W. E. Zink, Y. Persidsky, H. E. Gendelman, and H. Xiong, "Hippocampal synaptic dysfunction in a murine model of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 encephalitis," *Neuroscience*, vol. 118, no. 2, pp. 359–369, 2003.
- [138] J. P. Keblesh, H. Dou, H. E. Gendelman, and H. Xiong, "4-aminopyridine improves spatial memory in a murine model of HIV-1 encephalitis," *Journal of Neuroimmune Pharmacology*, vol. 4, no. 3, pp. 317–327, 2009.
- [139] S. A. Stilo and R. M. Murray, "The epidemiology of schizophrenia: replacing dogma with knowledge," *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, vol. 12, no. 3, pp. 305–315, 2010.
- [140] S. R. Kay, A. Fiszbein, and L. A. Opler, "The positive and negative syndrome scale (PANSS) for schizophrenia," *Schizophrenia Bulletin*, vol. 13, no. 2, pp. 261–276, 1987.
- [141] R. W. Heinrichs, "The primacy of cognition in schizophrenia," *American Psychologist*, vol. 60, no. 3, pp. 229–242, 2005.
- [142] T. W. Weickert, T. E. Goldberg, J. M. Gold, L. B. Bigelow, M. F. Egan, and D. R. Weinberger, "Cognitive impairments in patients with schizophrenia displaying preserved and compromised intellect," *Archives of General Psychiatry*, vol. 57, no. 9, pp. 907–913, 2000.
- [143] A. I. Potter and P. G. Nestor, "IQ subtypes in schizophrenia: distinct symptom and neuropsychological profiles," *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, vol. 198, no. 8, pp. 580–585, 2010.
- [144] B. K. Lipska and D. R. Weinberger, "To model a psychiatric disorder in animals: schizophrenia as a reality test," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, vol. 23, no. 3, pp. 223–239, 2000.
- [145] M. N. Quan, Y. T. Tian, K. H. Xu, T. Zhang, and Z. Yang, "Post weaning social isolation influences spatial cognition, prefrontal cortical synaptic plasticity and hippocampal potassium ion channels in Wistar rats," *Neuroscience*, vol. 169, no. 1, pp. 214–222, 2010.
- [146] X. Chen, L. L. Yuan, C. Zhao et al., "Deletion of  $K_v4.2$  gene eliminates dendritic A-type  $K^+$  current and enhances induction of long-term potentiation in hippocampal CA1 pyramidal neurons," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 26, no. 47, pp. 12143–12151, 2006.
- [147] M. L. Bourdeau, F. Morin, C. E. Laurent, M. Azzi, and J. C. Lacaille, " $K_v4.3$ -mediated A-type  $K^+$  currents underlie rhythmic activity in hippocampal interneurons," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 27, no. 8, pp. 1942–1953, 2007.
- [148] M. Gallagher and M. T. Koh, "Episodic memory on the path to Alzheimer's disease," *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*, vol. 21, no. 6, pp. 929–934, 2011.
- [149] J. J. Dougherty, J. Wu, and R. A. Nichols, " $\beta$ -amyloid regulation of presynaptic nicotinic receptors in rat hippocampus and neocortex," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 23, no. 17, pp. 6740–6747, 2003.
- [150] L. Betancourt and L. V. Colom, "Potassium ( $K^+$ ) channel expression in basal forebrain cholinergic neurons," *Journal of Neuroscience Research*, vol. 61, no. 6, pp. 646–651, 2000.
- [151] J. F. Kidd and D. B. Sattelle, "The effects of amyloid peptides on A-type  $K^+$  currents of *Drosophila* larval cholinergic neurons: modeled actions on firing properties," *Invertebrate Neuroscience*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 207–213, 2006.
- [152] J. F. Kidd, L. A. Brown, and D. B. Sattelle, "Effects of amyloid peptides on A-type  $K^+$  currents of *Drosophila* larval cholinergic neurons," *Journal of Neurobiology*, vol. 66, no. 5, pp. 476–487, 2006.
- [153] N. Demareux and G. L. Petheö, "Electron and proton transport by NADPH oxidases," *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B*, vol. 360, no. 1464, pp. 2315–2325, 2005.
- [154] M. L. Block, L. Zecca, and J. S. Hong, "Microglia-mediated neurotoxicity: uncovering the molecular mechanisms," *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 57–69, 2007.
- [155] R. Khanna, L. Roy, X. Zhu, and L. C. Schlichter, " $K^+$  channels and the microglial respiratory burst," *American Journal of Physiology*, vol. 280, no. 4, pp. C796–C806, 2001.
- [156] C. B. Fordyce, R. Jagasia, X. Zhu, and L. C. Schlichter, "Microglia  $K_v1.3$  channels contribute to their ability to kill neurons," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 25, no. 31, pp. 7139–7149, 2005.
- [157] A. Compston and A. Coles, "Multiple sclerosis," *The Lancet*, vol. 372, no. 9648, pp. 1502–1517, 2008.
- [158] N. D. Chiaravalloti and J. DeLuca, "Cognitive impairment in multiple sclerosis," *The Lancet Neurology*, vol. 7, no. 12, pp. 1139–1151, 2008.
- [159] L. Gutmann and L. Gutmann, "Axonal channelopathies: an evolving concept in the pathogenesis of peripheral nerve disorders," *Neurology*, vol. 47, no. 1, pp. 18–21, 1996.
- [160] H. Wang, D. D. Kunkel, T. M. Martin, P. A. Schwartzkroin, and B. L. Tempel, "Heteromultimeric  $K^+$  channels in terminal and juxtaparanodal regions of neurons," *Nature*, vol. 365, no. 6441, pp. 75–79, 1993.
- [161] E. Jankowska, A. Lundberg, P. Rudomin, and E. Sykova, "Effects of 4-aminopyridine on transmission in excitatory and inhibitory synapses in the spinal cord," *Brain Research*, vol. 136, no. 2, pp. 387–392, 1977.
- [162] R. M. Sherratt, H. Bostock, and T. A. Sears, "Effects of 4-aminopyridine on normal and demyelinated mammalian nerve fibres," *Nature*, vol. 283, no. 5747, pp. 570–572, 1980.
- [163] E. F. Targ and J. D. Kocsis, "4-Aminopyridine leads to restoration of conduction in demyelinated rat sciatic nerve," *Brain Research*, vol. 328, no. 2, pp. 358–361, 1985.
- [164] K. J. Smith, P. A. Felts, and G. R. John, "Effects of 4-aminopyridine on demyelinated axons, synapses and muscle tension," *Brain*, vol. 123, no. 1, pp. 171–184, 2000.
- [165] C. T. Bever Jr., "The current status of studies of aminopyridines in patients with multiple sclerosis," *Annals of Neurology*, vol. 36, pp. S118–S121, 1994.

- [166] C. H. Polman, F. W. Bertelsmann, A. C. Van Loenen, and J. C. Koetsier, "4-Aminopyridine in the treatment of patients with multiple sclerosis: long-term efficacy and safety," *Archives of Neurology*, vol. 51, no. 3, pp. 292–296, 1994.
- [167] J. Holoshitz, Y. Naparstek, and A. Ben-Nun, "T lymphocyte lines induce autoimmune encephalomyelitis, delayed hypersensitivity and bystander encephalitis," *European Journal of Immunology*, vol. 14, no. 8, pp. 729–734, 1984.
- [168] C. Beeton, H. Wulff, J. Barbaria et al., "Selective blockade of T lymphocyte K<sup>+</sup> channels ameliorates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, a model for multiple sclerosis," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 98, no. 24, pp. 13942–13947, 2001.
- [169] C. M. Fanger, H. Rauer, A. L. Neben et al., "Calcium-activated potassium channels sustain calcium signaling in T lymphocytes. Selective blockers and manipulated channel expression levels," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 15, pp. 12249–12256, 2001.
- [170] C. Beeton, J. Barbaria, P. Giraud et al., "Selective blocking of voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channels improves experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and inhibits T cell activation," *Journal of Immunology*, vol. 166, no. 2, pp. 936–944, 2001.
- [171] A. Solari, B. Uitdehaag, G. Giuliani, E. Pucci, and C. Taus, "Aminopyridines for symptomatic treatment in multiple sclerosis," *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, no. 4, Article ID CD001330, 2001.
- [172] A. R. Korenke, M. P. Rivey, and D. R. Allington, "Sustained-release fampridine for symptomatic treatment of multiple sclerosis," *Annals of Pharmacotherapy*, vol. 42, no. 10, pp. 1458–1465, 2008.
- [173] "Medication guide for Ampyra," <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM199168.pdf>.
- [174] W. R. G. Gibb, "Neuropathology of Parkinson's disease and related syndromes," *Neurologic Clinics*, vol. 10, no. 2, pp. 361–376, 1992.
- [175] J. Jankovic, "Parkinson's disease: clinical features and diagnosis," *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, vol. 79, no. 4, pp. 368–376, 2008.
- [176] B. Liss, O. Haecel, J. Wildmann, T. Miki, S. Seino, and J. Roeper, "K-ATP channels promote the differential degeneration of dopaminergic midbrain neurons," *Nature Neuroscience*, vol. 8, no. 12, pp. 1742–1751, 2005.
- [177] B. Liss and J. Roeper, "ATP-sensitive potassium channels in dopaminergic neurons: transducers of mitochondrial dysfunction," *News in Physiological Sciences*, vol. 16, no. 5, pp. 214–217, 2001.
- [178] A. H. V. Schapira, M. Gu, J. W. Taanman et al., "Mitochondria in the etiology and pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease," *Annals of Neurology*, vol. 44, no. 3, pp. S89–S98, 1998.
- [179] N. Patil, D. R. Cox, D. Bhat, M. Faham, R. M. Myers, and A. S. Peterson, "A potassium channel mutation in weaver mice implicates membrane excitability in granule cell differentiation," *Nature Genetics*, vol. 11, no. 2, pp. 126–129, 1995.
- [180] G. Tunnichliff, "Basis of the antiseizure action of phenytoin," *General Pharmacology*, vol. 27, no. 7, pp. 1091–1097, 1996.
- [181] W. Löscher, "New visions in the pharmacology of anticonvulsion," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 342, no. 1, pp. 1–13, 1998.
- [182] D. E. Blum, "New drugs for persons with epilepsy," *Advances in neurology*, vol. 76, pp. 57–87, 1998.
- [183] R. Guerrini, "Epilepsy in children," *Lancet*, vol. 367, no. 9509, pp. 499–524, 2006.
- [184] A. Aldenkamp and J. Arends, "The relative influence of epileptic EEG discharges, short nonconvulsive seizures, and type of epilepsy on cognitive function," *Epilepsia*, vol. 45, no. 1, pp. 54–63, 2004.
- [185] C. B. Dodrill, "Neuropsychological effects of seizures," *Epilepsy and Behavior*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. S21–S24, 2004.
- [186] E. Beghi, G. De Maria, G. Gobbi, and E. Veneselli, "Diagnosis and treatment of the first epileptic seizure: guidelines of the Italian League against Epilepsy," *Epilepsia*, vol. 47, no. 5, pp. 2–8, 2006.
- [187] K. J. Meador, "Cognitive and memory effects of the new antiepileptic drugs," *Epilepsy Research*, vol. 68, no. 1, pp. 63–67, 2006.
- [188] B. Hermann, "Cognition in epilepsy and its transient impairment," *Epilepsy and Behavior*, vol. 22, no. 3, p. 419, 2011.
- [189] P. N'Gouemo, "Targeting BK (big potassium) channels in epilepsy," *Expert Opinion on Therapeutic Targets*, vol. 15, no. 11, pp. 1283–1295, 2011.
- [190] B. S. Meldrum, "Identification and preclinical testing of novel antiepileptic compounds," *Epilepsia*, vol. 38, no. 9, pp. S7–S15, 1997.
- [191] B. Milner, "Disorders of learning and memory after temporal lobe lesions in man," *Clinical neurosurgery*, vol. 19, pp. 421–446, 1972.
- [192] B. P. Hermann, M. Seidenberg, J. Schoenfeld, and K. Davies, "Neuropsychological characteristics of the syndrome of mesial temporal lobe epilepsy," *Archives of Neurology*, vol. 54, no. 4, pp. 369–376, 1997.
- [193] H.-G. Wieser, "Mesial temporal lobe epilepsy with hippocampal sclerosis," *Epilepsia*, vol. 45, no. 6, pp. 695–714, 2004.
- [194] M. M. Saling, "Verbal memory in mesial temporal lobe epilepsy: beyond material specificity," *Brain*, vol. 132, no. 3, pp. 570–582, 2009.
- [195] E. C. Cooper, "Potassium channels: how genetic studies of epileptic syndromes open paths to new therapeutic targets and drugs," *Epilepsia*, vol. 42, no. 5, pp. 49–54, 2001.
- [196] B. S. Meldrum and M. A. Rogawski, "Molecular targets for antiepileptic drug development," *Neurotherapeutics*, vol. 4, no. 1, pp. 18–61, 2007.
- [197] C. E. Stafstrom, S. Grippone, and P. Kirkpatrick, "Ezogabine (retigabine)," *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery*, vol. 10, no. 10, pp. 729–730, 2011.
- [198] H. Vacher, G. Prestipino, M. Crest, and M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, "Definition of the alpha-KTx15 subfamily," *Toxicology*, vol. 43, no. 8, pp. 887–894, 2004.
- [199] W. J. Song, T. Tkatch, G. Baranauskas, N. Ichinohe, S. T. Kitai, and D. J. Surmeier, "Somatodendritic depolarization-activated potassium currents in rat neostriatal cholinergic interneurons are predominantly of the A type and attributable to coexpression of K<sub>v</sub>4.2 and K<sub>v</sub>4.1 subunits," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 18, no. 9, pp. 3124–3137, 1998.
- [200] D. Guan, T. Tkatch, D. J. Surmeier, W. E. Armstrong, and R. C. Foehring, "K<sub>v</sub>2 subunits underlie slowly inactivating potassium current in rat neocortical pyramidal neurons," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 581, no. 3, pp. 941–960, 2007.
- [201] D. Guan, L. R. Horton, W. E. Armstrong, and R. C. Foehring, "Postnatal development of A-type and K<sub>v</sub>1- and K<sub>v</sub>2-mediated potassium channel currents in neocortical pyramidal neurons," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 105, no. 6, pp. 2976–2988, 2011.

- [202] M. Sitges, L. D. Possani, and A. Bayon, "Noxiustoxin, a short-chain toxin from the Mexican scorpion *Centruroides noxius*, induces transmitter release by blocking  $K^+$  permeability," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 6, no. 6, pp. 1570–1574, 1986.
- [203] G. D'Suze, C. V. F. Batista, A. Frau et al., "Discrepin, a new peptide of the sub-family  $\alpha$ -KTx15, isolated from the scorpion *Tityus discrepans* irreversibly blocks  $K^+$ -channels ( $I_A$  currents) of cerebellum granular cells," *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics*, vol. 430, no. 2, pp. 256–263, 2004.
- [204] H. Vacher, R. Romi-Lebrun, C. Mourre et al., "A new class of scorpion toxin binding sites related to an A-type  $K^+$  channel: pharmacological characterization and localization in rat brain," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 501, no. 1–3, pp. 31–36, 2001.
- [205] M. H. Li, Y. F. Wang, X. Q. Chen, N. X. Zhang, H. M. Wu, and G. Y. Hu, "BmTx3B, a novel scorpion toxin from *Buthus martensi* Karsch, inhibits delayed rectifier potassium current in rat hippocampal neurons," *Acta Pharmacologica Sinica*, vol. 24, no. 10, pp. 1016–1062, 2003.
- [206] K. J. Swartz and R. MacKinnon, "An inhibitor of the  $K_v2.1$  potassium channel isolated from the venom of a Chilean tarantula," *Neuron*, vol. 15, no. 4, pp. 941–949, 1995.
- [207] S. Diochot, M. D. Drici, D. Moinier, M. Fink, and M. Lazdunski, "Effects of phrixotoxins on the  $K_v4$  family of potassium channels and implications for the role of Itoj in cardiac electrogenesis," *British Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 126, no. 1, pp. 251–263, 1999.
- [208] P. Escoubas, S. Diochot, M. L. Célrier, T. Nakajima, and M. Lazdunski, "Novel tarantula toxins for subtypes of voltage-dependent potassium channels in the  $K_v2$  and  $K_v4$  subfamilies," *Molecular Pharmacology*, vol. 62, no. 1, pp. 48–57, 2002.
- [209] W. A. Schmalhofer, K. S. Ratliff, A. B. Weinglass, G. J. Kaczorowski, M. L. Garcia, and J. Herrington, "A  $KV2.1$  gating modifier binding assay suitable for highthroughput screening," *Channels*, vol. 3, no. 6, pp. 437–447, 2009.
- [210] J. Ebbinghaus, C. Legros, A. Nolting et al., "Modulation of  $Kv4.2$  channels by a peptide isolated from the venom of the giant bird-eating tarantula *Theraphosa leblondi*," *Toxicon*, vol. 43, no. 8, pp. 923–932, 2004.
- [211] C. Kushmerick, E. Kalapothakis, P. S. L. Beirão et al., "Phoneutria nigriventer toxin Tx3-1 blocks A-type  $K^+$  currents controlling  $Ca^{2+}$  oscillation frequency in GH3 cells," *Journal of Neurochemistry*, vol. 72, no. 4, pp. 1472–1481, 1999.
- [212] C. W. Lee, S. Kim, S. H. Roh et al., "Solution structure and functional characterization of SGTx1, a modifier of  $K_v2.1$  channel gating," *Biochemistry*, vol. 43, no. 4, pp. 890–897, 2004.
- [213] O. B. McManus, "Calcium-activated potassium channels: regulation by calcium," *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes*, vol. 23, no. 4, pp. 537–560, 1991.
- [214] C. Vergara, R. Latorre, N. V. Marrion, and J. P. Adelman, "Calcium-activated potassium channels," *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*, vol. 8, no. 3, pp. 321–329, 1998.
- [215] M. Schreiber and L. Salkoff, "A novel calcium-sensing domain in the BK channel," *Biophysical Journal*, vol. 73, no. 3, pp. 1355–1363, 1997.
- [216] K. Yamamoto, K. Hashimoto, Y. Isomura, S. Shimohama, and N. Kato, "An  $IP_3$ -assisted form of  $Ca^{2+}$ -induced  $Ca^{2+}$  release in neocortical neurons," *NeuroReport*, vol. 11, no. 3, pp. 535–539, 2000.
- [217] K. Yamamoto, K. Hashimoto, M. Nakano, S. Shimohama, and N. Kato, "A distinct form of calcium release down-regulates membrane excitability in neocortical pyramidal cells," *Neuroscience*, vol. 109, no. 4, pp. 665–676, 2002.
- [218] J. Shi, H. Q. He, R. Zhao et al., "Inhibition of martenotoxin on neuronal BK channel subtype ( $\alpha+\beta4$ ): implications for a novel interaction model," *Biophysical Journal*, vol. 94, no. 9, pp. 3706–3713, 2008.
- [219] J. Garcia-Valdes, F. Z. Zamudio, L. Toro, and L. D. Possani, "Slotoxin,  $\alpha KTx1.11$ , a new scorpion peptide blocker of MaxiK channels that differentiates between  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha+\beta$  ( $\beta1$  or  $\beta4$ ) complexes," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 505, no. 3, pp. 369–373, 2001.
- [220] L. Vaca, G. B. Gurrola, L. D. Possani, and D. L. Kunze, "Blockade of a  $K_{Ca}$  channel with synthetic peptides from noxiustoxin: a  $K^+$  channel blocker," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 134, no. 2, pp. 123–129, 1993.
- [221] K. Nhrke, C. C. Quinn, and T. Begenisich, "Molecular identification of  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$  channels in parotid acinar cells," *American Journal of Physiology*, vol. 284, no. 2 53–2, pp. C535–C546, 2003.
- [222] G. G. Chicchi, G. Gimenez-Callego, E. Ber, M. L. Garcia, R. Winquist, and M. A. Cascieri, "Purification and characterization of a unique, potent inhibitor of apamin binding from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* venom," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 263, no. 21, pp. 10192–10197, 1988.
- [223] P. Pedarzani, D. D'Hoedt, K. B. Doorty et al., "Tamapin, a venom peptide from the Indian red scorpion (*Mesobuthus tamulus*) that targets small conductance  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$  channels and afterhyperpolarization currents in central neurons," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 277, no. 48, pp. 46101–46109, 2002.

## Review Article

# Potassium Channels Blockers from the Venom of *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus*

Marie-France Martin-Eauclaire and Pierre E. Bougis

Aix-Marseille University, CNRS, UMR 7286, CRN2M, Faculté de Médecine secteur Nord, CS80011, Boulevard Pierre Dramard, 13344 Marseille Cedex 15, France

Correspondence should be addressed to Marie-France Martin-Eauclaire, marie-france.eauclaire@univmed.fr and Pierre E. Bougis, pierre-edouard.bougis@univmed.fr

Received 2 February 2012; Accepted 16 March 2012

Academic Editor: Maria Elena de Lima

Copyright © 2012 M.-F. Martin-Eauclaire and P. E. Bougis. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

K<sup>+</sup> channels selectively transport K<sup>+</sup> ions across cell membranes and play a key role in regulating the physiology of excitable and nonexcitable cells. Their activation allows the cell to repolarize after action potential firing and reduces excitability, whereas channel inhibition increases excitability. In eukaryotes, the pharmacology and pore topology of several structural classes of K<sup>+</sup> channels have been well characterized in the past two decades. This information has come about through the extensive use of scorpion toxins. We have participated in the isolation and in the characterization of several structurally distinct families of scorpion toxin peptides exhibiting different K<sup>+</sup> channel blocking functions. In particular, the venom from the Moroccan scorpion *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* provided several high-affinity blockers selective for diverse K<sup>+</sup> channels (SK<sub>Ca</sub>, K<sub>v</sub>4.x, and K<sub>v</sub>1.x K<sup>+</sup> channel families). In this paper, we summarize our work on these toxin/channel interactions.

## 1. The Scorpion Venom Content

Scorpion venoms are very complex mixtures of molecules, constituting a diverse, naturally occurring peptide library, with most peptides displaying different kinds of biological activity [1, 2]. These peptides can specifically bind to a variety of pharmacological targets, in particular ion channels, resulting in neurotoxic effects. Toxins modulating Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>++</sup>, and Cl<sup>-</sup> currents have been described in scorpion venoms [2].

Toxins that are highly lethal for mammals modify voltage-gated Na<sup>+</sup> (Na<sub>v</sub>) currents in excitable cells and are referred to as “Na<sub>v</sub> channel long-chain toxin.” These toxins are single-chain, small, basic peptides (60- to 75-amino-acid residue chain generally folded by four disulfide bridges). They have been described as  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -toxins due to their binding site on Na<sub>v</sub> channels as well as to their pharmacological effects [1, 3].  $\alpha$ -Toxins bind in a voltage-dependent manner on the voltage sensor of the Na<sub>v</sub> channel domain IV and inhibit the inactivation phase of the action potential.  $\beta$ -Toxins act on the channel activation phase by binding

to extracellular loops located preferentially on the voltage sensor of the Na<sub>v</sub> channel domain II (but also occasionally of domain III) [1, 3–6].

Another class of scorpion toxins has also been widely studied, even if these toxins are devoid of serious lethal effect. They block different K<sup>+</sup> channel subtypes (some of them in the picomolar range) and are so-called “K<sup>+</sup> channel toxins” [1, 2, 7]. They are usually shorter than Na<sub>v</sub> channel toxins but are structurally closely related to them. These Na<sub>v</sub> and K<sup>+</sup> channels toxins share a common dense scaffold typically formed by an  $\alpha$ -helix and a  $\beta$ -sheet stabilized by disulfide bridges [8].

Several components of scorpion venom that act on Cl<sup>-</sup> and Ca<sup>++</sup> channels have also been described [2]. However, they have little or no influence on the venom toxicity for mammals.

This overview will focus, in particular, on our work done on the K<sup>+</sup> channel blockers purified from the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom, which were among the first K<sup>+</sup> channel blockers characterized from scorpion venoms.



## 2. K<sup>+</sup> Channel Blockers from Scorpion Venoms

K<sup>+</sup> channels constitute a ubiquitous family of transmembrane proteins which play a key role in the regulation of a wide variety of physiological processes involved in cell excitability, including regulation of heart beat, muscle contraction, neurotransmitter release, hormonal secretion, signal transduction, and cell proliferation [9]. Multiple combinations of K<sup>+</sup> channels result from the ability of their subunits to coassemble as tetramers, thus considerably increasing the total number of functionally distinct K<sup>+</sup> channels. According to their functional and gating properties, K<sup>+</sup> channels have been first divided into four groups: voltage-activated, Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated, inward rectifier, and two-pore K<sup>+</sup> channels [10]. Their 3D architecture has now been depicted by X-ray crystallography [11].

K<sup>+</sup> channel blocker's toxins (KTxs) from scorpion venoms are short peptides, which are made usually of about 28–40-amino-acid residues reticulated by three or four disulfide bridges, forming compact and resistant molecules [7]. They have been invaluable tools for understanding the physiological role of K<sup>+</sup> channels and have been exploited to gain insights into the structure of the channel pore that they occlude via electrostatic and hydrophobic interactions [12, 13]. They block K<sup>+</sup> channels from the extracellular side and bind to their outer vestibules. In most cases, they possess at least two functionally crucial residues: examples include a lysine residue that plugs the channel pore with its side chain and a hydrophobic residue that strengthens the interaction between the toxin and its target. These residues are found in very low concentrations in the venoms (from 0.01 to 1% by weight of crude venom) and have almost no toxic effects in mice when injected by subcutaneous route. However, some of them could be very toxic following direct intracerebroventricular injection.

Based on primary amino acid sequences and cysteine pairing, KTxs have been classified into four families, the  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ -, and  $\kappa$ -KTx [2, 7]. So far more than 120 KTxs, ranging from 23 to 64 amino acids, have been isolated and sequenced. Most of their structures exhibit a common minimal motif, named the "Cystein-Stabilized-Helix" (CSH). As found in Buthidae scorpions, long and short toxins consist of one  $\alpha$ -helix and two or three  $\beta$ -strands, in which two disulfide bridges covalently link a segment of the  $\alpha$ -helix with one strand of the  $\beta$ -sheet structure [8]. Even if their amino acid sequences are different, the conserved peptide fold allows insertions, deletions, and mutations conferring to the toxins diverse selectivity and affinity for their target. Only the recently characterized  $\kappa$ -KTxs are formed by two parallel  $\alpha$ -helices linked by two disulfide bridges [14].

The  $\alpha$ -KTx family is the largest one and is divided into at least 22 subfamilies, defined according to the primary sequence alignments of the toxins. Each member has diverse, specific blocking activities against voltage-gated (K<sub>v</sub>) and calcium-activated (K<sub>Ca</sub>) channels. Most of the  $\alpha$ -KTxs bind to the ion channel vestibule through the  $\beta$ -sheet side of their structure.

Other, longer peptides, with 45- to 68-amino acid residues and cross-linked by three disulfide bridges, have

been characterized and classified as the  $\beta$ -KTx family. They possess two structural and functional domains: an N-terminal  $\alpha$ -helix (with cytolytic or antimicrobial activity like the insect defensins) and a tightly folded C-terminal region with the CSH motif (displaying K<sup>+</sup> channel-blocking activities [15]). Finally, the  $\gamma$ -KTx family was described as specifically targeting hERG channels [16].

## 3. The *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* Venom

Scorpion stings in Morocco are the primary cause of envenomation and constitute a largely underestimated health problem. An epidemiologic study of four regions of the Moroccan Kingdom, where scorpion stings are prevalent, showed that the stings are mainly due to the black scorpion *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* (83% of the reported cases). Children, in desert areas far from medical centers, were the primary victims, with casualty rates up to 8% in those under ten years old. The *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom is one of the most toxic Buthidae venoms ever described (its median lethal dose ranges from 0.05 to 0.2 mg/kg by subcutaneous injection in mice) and immunotherapy remains the treatment of choice [17].

Previous fractionation studies of the venom allowed identification of several toxins that are active on different Na<sub>v</sub> or K<sub>v</sub> channels [18–22]. At least several major proteins, considered highly toxic to mice, have already been purified and chemically and pharmacologically characterized as classical  $\alpha$ -toxins [18, 19]. All together, these toxins represent about 28% of the absorbance (wavelength 280 nm) of the crude venom and 73% of the total lethality for mice. The most represented and the most lethal classical  $\alpha$ -toxin Amm V alone constitutes 11% of the absorbance and 47% of the total lethality.

However, other toxins isolated from the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom gained popularity as powerful tools because they have displayed some of the highest binding affinity and specificity for K<sup>+</sup> channels. They have been extensively used to investigate the mechanisms of ion conduction and channel selectivity, as well as the architecture of the pore region. Finally, significant advances have been made by using solid-state NMR data to construct 3D structures from Kaliotoxin (KTX) in complex with a chimeric K<sup>+</sup> channel KcsA-K<sub>v</sub>1.3 [13]. These studies allowed direct investigation of the molecular rearrangements associated with KTX binding on both the channel selectivity filter and the KTX itself.

A recent MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry (MS) study has provided new information about the molecular composition of scorpion venom [23]. Through the developments in proteomics, MS is now widely used for accurate and sensitive determinations of molecular masses and identification of heterogenous complex mixtures such as crude venoms. Using an offline MALDI-TOF/MS analysis, we were able to determine the molecular masses of about 70 to 80 different compounds ranging between 3000 and 8000 Da in an *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom obtained



under manual stimulation from a pool of animals kept alive at the “Pasteur Institute” of Casablanca, Morocco. Figure 1 presents the snapshot of this crude venom.

#### 4. The Smallest Toxins Identified so Far in the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* Venom: P01 ( $\alpha$ -KTx8) and P05 ( $\alpha$ -KTx5), Ligands of SK<sub>Ca</sub> Channels

P01 ( $\alpha$ -KTx 8.1 subfamily, 3177 Da) is devoid of significant toxicity in mouse [26]. This toxin of 28-amino-acid residues, which is the smallest K<sup>+</sup> channels ligand in the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom, is slightly negatively charged with acidic amino acids localized at the beginning of the  $\beta$ -turn and extending along the  $\alpha$ -helix (Figure 2(a)). Surprisingly, P01 presents exactly the same sequence in *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus*, *Androctonus australis*, *Androctonus amoreuxi*, and *Buthus occitanus* venoms. Usually, the polymorphism among scorpion toxins is so high that their sequences vary from a scorpion subspecies to another, even in the same structural, pharmacological, and immunological family. P01 is a poor-affinity ligand (300 nM) for the apamin-binding site on rat brain synaptosomes. In comparison, apamin purified from the bee venom displays a very high affinity ( $K_d = 8$  pM) for its target, that is, the small-conductance calcium-activated K<sup>+</sup> channel (SK<sub>Ca</sub>) channel so-called apamin-sensitive channel. Since the first P01 characterization, other closely related analogs have been purified from other Buthidae venoms. Among them, one is particularly interesting because it shares 89% of identity with P01. This analog, called OdK1, was purified from the Iranian scorpion *Odontobuthus doriae* ( $\alpha$ -KTx 8.5 subfamily). OdK1 is able to block K<sub>v</sub>1.2 channels expressed in oocytes with a median inhibition concentration (IC<sub>50</sub>) value of 183 nM and has no effect on K<sub>v</sub>1.1, K<sub>v</sub>1.3, K<sub>v</sub>1.4, K<sub>v</sub>1.5, and the *Shaker* channels [27]. It is important to mention that P01 has not been tested yet on K<sub>v</sub>1.2 channels in electrophysiological experiments. P01 was only shown unable to compete with <sup>125</sup>I-KTX (a K<sub>v</sub>1.1 and K<sub>v</sub>1.3 and not K<sub>v</sub>1.2 blocker) bound to its receptor on rat brain synaptosomes. Thus, we cannot totally exclude that P01 could exhibit a poor K<sub>v</sub>1.2 blocking activity. In the same line, OdK1 activity on SK<sub>Ca</sub> channels has not been tested yet either.

In contrast to P01, P05, another toxin from *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus*, is a high-affinity selective ligand ( $K_d = 100$  pM) for the apamin-binding site on rat brain synaptosomes, and it has no effects on BK<sub>Ca</sub> or K<sub>v</sub> channels. P05 is a 31-amino-acid long peptide (3415 Da), which belongs to the  $\alpha$ -KTx5.x's family (as Leiurotoxin1 or Scyllatoxin from the venom of the scorpion *Leiurus quinquestriatus Hebraeus*) (Figure 2(b)) [29, 30]. The toxins from this family have only two-stranded  $\beta$ -sheet because of their short N-terminal side [28]. P05 is highly toxic (14 ng, i.e., 4 pmols for a 20 g mouse) and leads to an epileptic behavior when injected in mouse by the intracerebroventricular route. P05 possesses a short stretch of four amino acids similar to the one in the apamin sequence, which constitutes a highly positively charged region in the

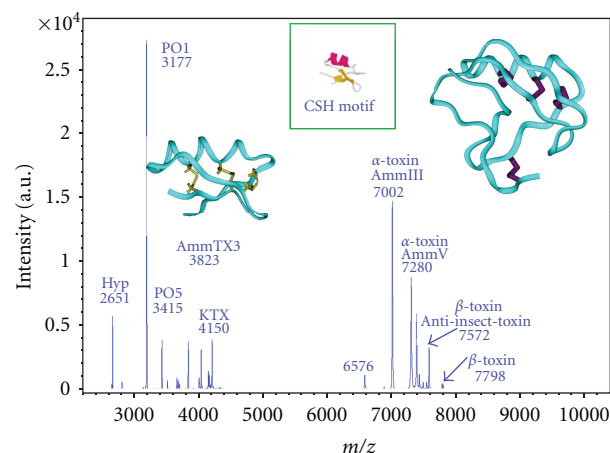


FIGURE 1: MALDI-TOF mass spectra of pool venom manually extracted from *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus*. K<sup>+</sup> channel blockers and voltage-gated Na<sup>+</sup> channels modulators are indicated. P01 and P05, blockers of SK<sub>Ca</sub> channels; AmmTX3, blockers of K<sub>v</sub>4 and hERG channels; KTX, K<sub>v</sub>1.1, and K<sub>v</sub>1.3 blockers. Amm III and Amm V are major lethal  $\alpha$ -toxins;  $\beta$ -toxins specific for insects are also mentioned. The 3D structure of KTX (left) and of the  $\alpha$ -toxin of reference AaH II from *Androctonus australis* (right) are shown [13, 24, 25]. The Cys-Stabilized-Helix (CSH) motif is shown in inset [8].

$\alpha$ -helix (containing in particular two Arg residues, Arg<sub>7</sub> and Arg<sub>9</sub>) exposed to solvent. Extensive structure-function studies using chemically synthesized analogs revealed that these two Arg were critical for P05's interaction with its target as described for apamin [31]. When Arg were replaced by Lys, the activity dropped by a factor of one hundred, and when they were replaced by Ile, the affinity decreased even more to a K<sub>d</sub> value in the micromolar range. Moreover,  $\alpha$ -amidation of His in P05 C-terminal conferred a large gain of function leading to an almost irreversible binding to its receptor [21]. When the apamin C-terminal residue is in the free carboxylic form, only 0.06% of the pharmacological activity of the native C-amidated apamin is retained [32]. Both Arg and C-terminal His create a strong positive electrostatic potential, which drives the toxin to negative residues (Asp) of the channel pore. Using homology-modeling models of SK channels (rsk1, rsk2, and rsk3) and Brownian dynamics methods, the recognition between P05 and its targets was investigated [33]. It was found that the rsk2 channel, presenting the highest frequencies and lowest electrostatic interaction energies, was the most favorable target for P05 binding, while rsk3 was intermediate, and rsk1 was the least favorable. From the P05-rsk2 complex model, it was shown that P05 probably locates around the extracellular pore of SK channels and assures the contact with rsk2 channel using critical basic amino acid residues in its  $\alpha$ -helix: Arg<sub>6</sub> (P05)-Asp<sub>364</sub> (SK), Arg<sub>7</sub> (P05)-Asn<sub>368</sub> (SK), and Arg<sub>13</sub> (P05)-Asp<sub>341</sub> and Asp<sub>364</sub> (SK). Further refinements of P05-rsk2 complex model using molecular mechanics showed that six hydrogen bonding interactions exist between P05 and the rsk2 channel. These simulation results were in good agreement with our previous *in vivo* binding experiments and could explain

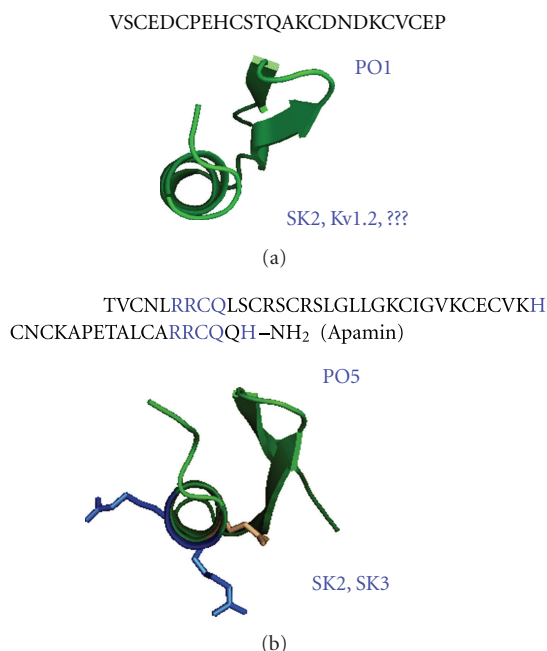


FIGURE 2: Amino acid sequences and 3D structures of P01 and P05. (a) Amino acid sequence (single letter notation) and 3D structure of P01 [26, 28]. (b) Amino acid sequence (single letter notation) of P05 compared to that of the bee venom apamin (18 mers peptide). Amino acids common to P05 and apamin and crucial for the SK<sub>Ca</sub> blockade are in blue. These amino acids are materialized on the 3D structure of P05, view by the  $\alpha$ -helix axis. The two positive Arg are in blue and the neutral Gln is in brown.

the interaction between P05 and SK channels at the level of the molecular structure.

### 5. The Most Noted K<sup>+</sup> Channel Blocker Characterized in the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* Venom: Kaliotoxin ( $\alpha$ -KTx3 Subfamily)

The Kaliotoxin (KTX, 4150 Da) purified from the venom of the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* was the first identified member of the  $\alpha$ -KTx3.1 subfamily, which is currently composed of 13 highly homolog members sharing more than 75% sequence identity. KTX was first described as a BK<sub>Ca</sub> low-affinity blocker [20], but further analysis showed that KTX blocked more specifically K<sub>v</sub>1.3 channels with a very high affinity ( $K_d = 10$  pM) and K<sub>v</sub>1.1 with a much weaker affinity (in the 10 nM range). KTX also exhibited a functional blockade of Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> Gardos channel from rabbit or human red blood cells with a median inhibition concentration value of 5 nM. Interaction between this channel and other peptide toxins indicated that the Gardos channel was pharmacologically different in several interesting ways from the other Ca<sup>2+</sup>-activated K<sup>+</sup> channels [34]. Interestingly, KTX was not toxic in mice by subcutaneous injection up to 500 micrograms (100 nmols),

but intracerebroventricularly injected mice showed tremor, paralysis, and death with a median lethal dose of only 24 ng of KTX (about 6 pmol for a 20 g mouse).

KTX was then widely used by different international groups to probe the vestibule topology from the lymphocyte K<sub>v</sub>1.3 channel. The homotetrameric K<sub>v</sub>1.3 channel controls the resting potential membrane in T cells and plays a crucial role in human T-lymphocyte activation [35]. Its inhibition causes depolarization and an attenuation of the rise in the intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration that is required for T-cell activation. Accordingly, K<sub>v</sub>1.3 channel is a good therapeutic target for the development of immunosuppressant drugs. It is important to note that K<sub>v</sub>1.3 channel is a key mediator of multiple sclerosis, type 1 diabetes mellitus, and rheumatoid arthritis pathologies [36]. In experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) rat, animal model for multiple sclerosis, KTX was capable of immunosuppressant activity *in vivo*. Addition of KTX during Antigen/T-cell activation led to a large reduction of the T-cell proliferative response, a decreased encephalitogenicity of T cells, and finally improved the symptoms of EAE [37].

A new therapeutic approach for inflammatory bone resorption by targeting K<sub>v</sub>1.3 was also investigated and the potential effect of KTX was tested on inflammatory lesions of periodontal disease. These lesions contain abundant activated/memory T and B cells, which control immunological interactive networks and accelerate bone resorption. Systemic KTX administration finally resulted in an 84% decrease of the bone resorption. These results suggested that KTX could also constitute a potential therapy to prevent alveolar bone loss in periodontal disease [38].

Monoiodinated derivative of KTX (<sup>125</sup>I-KTX) binds specifically to rat brain total membranes with a maximal binding capacity of about 14 fmol/mg of protein and with a high affinity ( $K_d = 80$  pM). The distribution of <sup>125</sup>I-KTX binding sites in rat brain was first studied using quantitative autoradiography on adult brain tissue sections. A comparison with the distribution of K<sub>v</sub>1.1 and K<sub>v</sub>1.3  $\alpha$ -subunits by immunohistochemistry or *in situ* hybridization suggested that KTX recognizes channels containing these subunits [39]. Further, we used KTX injected by intracerebroventricular route to rat brain in order to investigate the involvement of K<sub>v</sub> channels containing K<sub>v</sub>1.1 and K<sub>v</sub>1.3  $\alpha$ -subunits in olfactory associative learning and memory. KTX facilitated cognitive processes as learning, in particular in a reference representation [40]. Therefore, it is likely that KTX-sensitive K<sub>v</sub> channels contribute to the repolarization of action potentials at presynaptic terminals of hippocampal inhibitory neurons and induce facilitation of the transmission.

Concerning the KTX structure-function relationship studies, they were first performed using synthetic analogs such as KTX<sub>(1-37)</sub>, KTX<sub>(1-37)-amide</sub> and short peptides including KTX<sub>(27-37)</sub>, KTX<sub>(25-32)</sub>, and KTX<sub>(1-11)</sub>. Concerning the short peptides, which corresponded to secondary structural elements, only KTX<sub>(27-37)</sub> and KTX<sub>(25-32)</sub> were able to compete with <sup>125</sup>I-KTX for its receptor on rat brain synaptosomes and act as antagonists of KTX. These results demonstrated for the first time that the C-terminal region, particularly the toxin  $\beta$ -sheet, was involved in the interaction with the

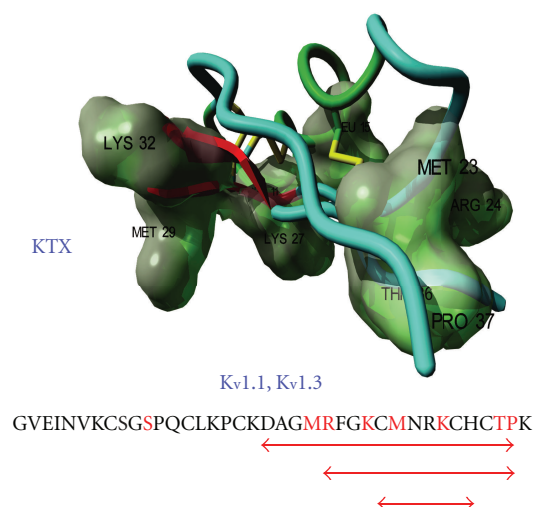


FIGURE 3: Amino acid sequence and 3D structure of KTX. The crucial amino acid residues involved in the receptor recognition are in red and are materialized on the 3D structure according to Lange et al., 2006 [13]. The  $\alpha$ -helix is in green, the  $\beta$ -sheet in red. Arrows in red indicate the three peptides able to compete ( $K_d = 100$  nM) with the  $^{125}\text{I}$ -KTX bound to its binding site on rat brain synaptosomes [41].

receptor and the channel blockade [41]. Figure 3 summarizes these results.

Several international groups also produced KTX and numerous mutants using chemical synthesis or heterologous expression, in order to identify KTX residues implicated in the specific interaction with  $\text{K}_v1.3$  channels. It was found that the side chain of Lys<sub>27</sub> of the toxin enters deeply into the channel pore and interacts with the Asp<sub>402</sub> residue of each subunit [24]. Briefly, the KTX residues involved in the interaction with the channel were Arg<sub>24</sub>, Phe<sub>25</sub>, Lys<sub>27</sub>, Met<sub>39</sub>, Asn<sub>30</sub>, Arg<sub>31</sub>. All these residues were present in the short peptides that we first used to demonstrate the  $\beta$ -sheet importance in the channel blockade. A model also predicted that Ser<sub>11</sub> of the KTX made steric contacts with His<sub>404</sub> and Pro<sub>405</sub> of the  $\alpha$ -subunit IV of the  $\text{K}_v1.3$  and Thr<sub>36</sub> with His<sub>404</sub> of the opposing  $\text{K}_v1.3$   $\alpha$ -subunit [42].

KTX binding to a chimeric  $\text{K}^+$  channel (KcsA- $\text{K}_v1.3$ ) in proteoliposomes was investigated using solid-state nuclear magnetic resonance (ssNMR) [13]. Upon complex formation, significant chemical shift changes of the residues implicated in the specific interaction were observed for both KTX and chimeric channel. For KTX, the conformational changes involved mainly  $\beta$ -sheet contacts between the first and third  $\beta$ -strand and for the chimeric channel it affected the conformation of both the pore helix and the selectivity filter. The backbone conformation of KcsA- $\text{K}_v1.3$  selectivity filter adopted a novel structure with features of both the conducting and collapsed conformation of the KcsA. The ssNMR data directly showed that Asp<sub>64</sub> in the KcsA- $\text{K}_v1.3$  vestibule represented an important interaction site for KTX. Large chemical shift changes were seen for Gly<sub>77</sub>, Tyr<sub>78</sub>, and Gly<sub>79</sub> in the selectivity filter and also for the side chains of

Glu<sub>71</sub> and Asp<sub>80</sub> that form carboxyl-carboxylate pairs on the backside of the filter [13]. Finally, an enhanced backbone mobility was detected for two glycine residues within the selectivity filter that are highly conserved amongst potassium channels and are of core relevance to the filter structure and ion selectivity [43, 44].

Combination of additional ssNMR studies, dynamic simulations, and electrophysiological measurements finally revealed the complete mechanism of KTX binding to its receptor site and showed a structural link between inactivation and block of the channel. A mechanism of cooperative toxin-induced conformational changes that are structurally and functionally related to recovery from C-type inactivation, would be the consequence of the very tight interaction between KTX and KcsA- $\text{K}_v1.3$ . The KTX affinity was lowered by about 20-fold when the  $\text{K}_v1.3$  channels entered in C-type inactivation probably due to changes of the interaction surface between the toxin and the channel [43–45].

All these recent ssNMR data obtained between the chimeric KcsA- $\text{K}_v1.3$  channel and KTX have largely contributed to decrypt the intimate interaction between a  $\text{K}^+$  channel blocker and its target, as well as to better understand the blockade of the  $\text{K}^+$  conduction.

## 6. The $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> Subfamily: Janus $\text{K}_v4.x$ and hERG Blockers

The first member of the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily characterized was Aa1 from the *Androctonus australis* venom (3869 Da) [46]. At the primary sequence level, the toxin has an unusual N-terminal pyroglutamic acid, like Charybdotoxin and Iberitoxin, but the rest of its sequence was totally original. Aa1 completely blocked a fast  $I_A$ -type  $\text{K}^+$  current from cerebellum granular cells. Using whole-cell patch clamp recording on striatal neurons in culture, we selected another novel toxin, BmTX3 from *Buthus martensii*, which was also able to block a fast  $I_A$ -type  $\text{K}^+$  current. The sustained current was unaffected with a micromolar dose of toxin whereas the  $I_A$ -type  $\text{K}^+$  current completely disappeared independently of the membrane potential. Autoradiograms of adult rat brain sections demonstrated a highly heterogeneous distribution of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -BmTX3 binding sites throughout the adult rat brain. High density of receptors was found in the striatum, the CA1 and CA3 field of the hippocampus, the superior colliculus, and in the granular layer of the cerebellum [47]. We then purified AmmTX3 (3827 Da), an analog of Aa1 and BmTX3, from the venom of *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* [22]. Latter, several cDNAs encoding two Aa1 isoforms, AaTX1 (3867 Da) and AaTX2 (3853 Da), were identified by PCR amplification from a venom gland cDNA library of *Androctonus australis* [48]. Also, another oligonucleotide sequence, AamTX (3751 Da), was amplified from a venom gland cDNA library of *Androctonus amoreuxi* [49]. Altogether these toxins constitute the first members of the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily (Figure 4). From a pharmacological point of view, these toxins were unable to compete with any other already described toxins purified from animal venom. However, they were toxic in mouse at high doses by intracerebral injections and induced epileptic status, which



Aa1	ZNETNKKCQGGG-CASVCR <b>RV</b> IGVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
BmTX3	ZVETNVKCQGGG-CASVCR <b>KA</b> IGVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
AmmTX3	ZIETNKKCQGGG-CASVCR <b>KV</b> IGVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
AamTX*	ZVQTNKKCKGGG-CASVCA <b>KV</b> IGVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
AaTX1*	ZIETNKKCQGGG-CASVCR <b>RV</b> IGVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
AaTX2*	ZVETNKKCQGGG-CASVCR <b>RV</b> IVVAA <b>GR</b> KCINGRCVCYP
Discr.	ZIDTNVKCSGGSSCKVKICIDRYNTRGA <b>KC</b> INGR <b>CT</b> CYP

FIGURE 4: Amino acid sequences of the toxins from the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily. Aa1 [46], AaTX1, and AaTX2 [48] are from *Androctonus australis*; BmTX3 [47] is from *Buthus martensii*; AmmTX3 [22] is from *Androctonus mauretanicus*; AamTX [49] is from *Androctonus amoreuxi*. Discrepin [54] is from the Venezuelan scorpion *Tityus discrepans*. Single letter notation is used for amino acid sequences. Z is pyroglutamic acid. \*Indicates putative amino acid sequence deduced from cloned cDNA oligonucleotide sequence. The  $\beta$ -sheet consensus sequence is in grey.

could last 24 to 48 hours. Also, they all shared the same target on rat brain synaptosomes because they competed with each other for the same binding site. The nature of the K<sup>+</sup> channels blocked by AmmTX3 was assessed by performing whole-cell patch recording of the K<sup>+</sup> currents of striatal neurons and of cerebellum granular cells in culture. In all cases, AmmTX3 inactivated the transient A-current without affecting the sustained K<sup>+</sup> current, as observed for Aa1 and BmTX3. As well described, A-type K<sup>+</sup>-currents result mainly from the expression of voltage-dependent K<sub>v</sub>  $\alpha$ -subunits (K<sub>v</sub>1.4, 3.4, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3) or from the association of K<sub>v</sub>  $\beta$ -subunit with K<sub>v</sub>1  $\alpha$ -subunits [50, 51]. In the cerebellum granular cells, the voltage-gated K<sup>+</sup> channels K<sub>v</sub>4 of the Shal subfamily elicits A-type currents. These channels are fast transient K<sup>+</sup> channels that regulate the kinetics of the action potential [51, 52]. The localizations of K<sub>v</sub>4 subunits and their auxiliary subunits were similar to the distribution of BmTX3 binding sites in numerous regions of the brain. For example, the high density of BmTX3 binding sites in the CA1 field and CA3 field followed K<sub>v</sub>4.2 and K<sub>v</sub>4.3 immunostaining patterns. In the molecular layer of the dentate gyrus, the BmTX3 binding pattern was also similar to the immunoreactivity pattern of K<sub>v</sub>4 and KChIP subunits, with a higher density in distal dendrites of the granular layer than in the more proximal dendrite areas [53].

Finally, electrophysiological analysis of mammalian cells expressing different A-type channels showed that BmTX3 completely inhibited the rapidly activating and inactivating K<sub>v</sub>4.1 current in a voltage-independent manner. This inhibition was less effective on K<sub>v</sub>4.2 and K<sub>v</sub>4.3 channels and the toxin did not show any effects on other transient currents elicited by K<sub>v</sub>1.4 and K<sub>v</sub>3.4 [53]. Recent electrophysiological studies using acute coronal midbrain slices and AmmTX3 confirmed that the targets of the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily are K<sub>v</sub>4 channels [55, Rudy B, personal communication]. Interestingly, the radioiodinated  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> toxins bound to their receptor on rat brain neurons were not displaced by any spider toxin, which block K<sub>v</sub>4 channels. This result suggests that these scorpion and spider K<sub>v</sub>4 blockers have different binding sites. The  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> toxins most probably block the K<sub>v</sub>4 channel pore because tarantula

toxins inhibit K<sub>v</sub>4 channels by binding to the voltage-sensor paddles (crucial helix-turn-helix motifs within the voltage-sensing domains composed of the S3b and S4 helices) [56]. Moreover, deletions of the last two BmTX3 C-terminal residues ( $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily) were made to assess the role of the penultimate Tyr residue in the receptor recognition. This Tyr resembled to the canonical dyad previously proposed as necessary to block the K<sup>+</sup> channel conduction with high efficacy. Our results showed that the truncated toxin bound to its receptor less efficiently than the wild-type toxin (by a factor of about 10<sup>5</sup>) and had no more channel blocking activity [57]. All these results suggest that the K<sub>v</sub>4 channels blocked by the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily might have a canonical K<sup>+</sup> channel pore structure.

Moreover, we also described a significant hERG-blocking activity from the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> toxins, as previously shown for the  $\gamma$ -KTx peptides. AmmTX3 induced a hERG channel block with no alteration of the gating kinetics. According to a model of the  $\gamma$ -KTx toxin BeKm-1 from *Buthus eupeus* docked on hERG channels, the toxin BeKm-1 is above the pore entrance and none of its side chains penetrate deeply into the pore. While  $\alpha$ -KTx members usually interact with channels through their  $\beta$ -sheets,  $\gamma$ -KTxs modulate hERG in a different way than the one proposed for the interaction between Charybdotoxin and the Shaker channel or between KTX and the K<sub>v</sub>1.3, in which the critical Lys<sub>27</sub> protrudes into the pore of the channel. BeKm-1 uses its  $\alpha$ -helix and the following turn (possessing two basic residues Lys<sub>18</sub> and Arg<sub>20</sub>), to interact with hERG channel [58, 59]. In contrast to the other  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> members, a new toxin of this subfamily isolated from the Venezuelan scorpion *Tityus discrepans*, called Discrepin ( $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15-6</sub>), was also able to block an A-type K<sup>+</sup> current in cerebellum granular cells in culture, but was ineffective to block the hERG channel. Its amino acid sequence displays only 50% identity with the other members purified mainly from Old-World scorpion venoms (Figure 4). Discrepin C-terminal  $\beta$ -sheet, supposed to interfere with the K<sub>v</sub>4 channel pore, presented a consensus amino acid sequence similar to those found in the other members (in grey on Figure 4), but its “hot spot” for hERG channel blockade was altered. After several point mutations in AmmTX3 and introduction of positive charged residues in Discrepin, it was finally demonstrated that a common “hot spot” composed of two basic residues (Arg<sub>18</sub> and Lys<sub>19</sub> near the end of the  $\alpha$ -helix) conferred hERG blockade activity of  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> peptides [54]. From a structural point of view, we proposed that two separate functional surfaces (A and B) could coexist on the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> toxins, and were responsible for two different K<sup>+</sup>-current-blocking functions [60].

To extend our theory to other members from  $\alpha$ -KTx subfamily, the effects of a “hot spot” bearing toxin were tested on hERG channels and compared to the results obtained with a toxin without the “hot spot.” From these studies, it was concluded that only the  $\alpha$ -KTxs possessing the “hot spot” were able to interact with the pore of hERG channels. This pharmacophore could either be -CKKX- or -CKXX- or -CXKKX-, with C being the third Cys, X being any nonpositively charged amino acid, and K being Lys or Arg [54].

## 7. Conclusion

Scorpion venom still remains a proven resource for the discovery of novel biologically active compounds, especially for the pharmacologists involved in research on ionic channels. A total of about 210  $\alpha$ -KTx oligonucleotide or amino acid sequences are now referenced in the UniProtKB data bank, but only some of these  $\alpha$ -KTx peptides have really been shown able to block  $K^+$  currents. Unfortunately, very often, there is no direct evidence described for the function of the reported peptides. Some of them represent new analogs of well-known families with described channel selectivity, but others exhibit novel structural features or activities. Majority of the  $\alpha$ -KTx effects were determined on the  $K_v1.x$  subfamily or in a less extent on the  $Ca^{2+}$ -activated  $K^+$  channels ( $SK_{Ca}$  sensitive to the bee venom apamin or  $BK_{Ca}$ ). During the last two decades, we obtained a lot of results that provided new insight into the targets and the mode of action of some  $\alpha$ -KTxs isolated from different potent North African *Androctonus* venoms. In particular, numerous studies on the *Androctonus mauretanicus* venom "manually" extracted, which can be considered as the physiological venom secretion, have greatly contributed to the chemical, immunological, structural, and pharmacological characterization of some highly specific  $K^+$  channel blockers. With AmmTX3, we have enlarged the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>15</sub> subfamily and defined more properly its target, the  $K_v4$  channels. KTX, from the  $\alpha$ -KTx<sub>3</sub> subfamily, was finally proven to be a powerful tool used by several international teams to depict the molecular mechanisms of interaction between  $K^+$  channels and peptide inhibitors, as well as to demonstrate that the binding of  $K^+$  channel specific scorpion toxins does not take place only on the outer vestibule of the channel pore but also deeper into the selectivity filter. The binding involves a combination of hydrophobic, hydrogen bonding and electrostatic interactions, which induces significant structural rearrangements in both interacting molecules. It was then proposed that structural flexibility of the  $K^+$  channel and the toxin represent an important determinant of the high specificity of toxin/ $K^+$  channel interactions [13].

## Acknowledgments

The authors wish to thank Drs. N. Abbas, F. Bosmans, B. Card, C. Legros, J. Tytgat, and H. Vacher, H for their contribution at a moment or another in the purification, pharmacological or electrophysiological characterization and cloning and mutagenesis of the *Androctonus mauretanicus* toxins blocking  $K^+$  channels.

## References

- [1] M. F. Martin-Eauclaire and F. Couraud, "Scorpion neurotoxins: effects and mechanisms," in *Handbook Neurotoxicology*, L. W. Chang and R. S. Dyer, Eds., pp. 683–716, Marcel Dekker, New York, NY, USA, 1995.
- [2] L. D. Possani, E. Merino, M. Corona, F. Bolivar, and B. Becerril, "Peptides and genes coding for scorpion toxins that affect ion-channels," *Biochimie*, vol. 82, no. 9–10, pp. 861–868, 2000.
- [3] R. C. Rodríguez De La Vega and L. D. Possani, "Overview of scorpion toxins specific for  $Na^+$  channels and related peptides: biodiversity, structure-function relationships and evolution," *Toxicon*, vol. 46, no. 8, pp. 831–844, 2005.
- [4] S. Cestèle and W. A. Catterall, "Molecular mechanisms of neurotoxin action on voltage-gated sodium channels," *Biochimie*, vol. 82, no. 9–10, pp. 883–892, 2000.
- [5] F. Bosmans, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, and K. J. Swartz, "Deconstructing voltage sensor function and pharmacology in sodium channels," *Nature*, vol. 456, no. 7219, pp. 202–208, 2008.
- [6] F. Bosmans, M. Puopolo, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, B. P. Bean, and K. J. Swartz, "Functional properties and toxin pharmacology of a dorsal root ganglion sodium channel viewed through its voltage sensors," *Journal of General Physiology*, vol. 138, no. 1, pp. 59–72, 2011.
- [7] J. Tytgat, K. G. Chandy, M. L. Garcia et al., "A unified nomenclature for short-chain peptides isolated from scorpion venoms:  $\alpha$ -KTx molecular subfamilies," *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*, vol. 20, no. 11, pp. 444–447, 1999.
- [8] F. Bontems, C. Roumestand, B. Gilquin, A. Ménéz, and F. Toma, "Refined structure of charybdotoxin: common motifs in scorpion toxins and insect defensins," *Science*, vol. 254, no. 5037, pp. 1521–1523, 1991.
- [9] O. Pongs, *Regulation of Excitability by Potassium Channels. Inhibitory Regulation of Excitatory Neurotransmission*, vol. 44 of *Results and Problems in Cell Differentiation*, Springer, Heidelberg, Germany, 2007.
- [10] G. A. Gutman, K. G. Chandy, S. Grissmer et al., "International Union of Pharmacology. LIII. Nomenclature and molecular relationships of voltage-gated potassium channels," *Pharmacological Reviews*, vol. 57, no. 4, pp. 473–508, 2005.
- [11] S. B. Long, E. B. Campbell, and R. MacKinnon, "Crystal structure of a mammalian voltage-dependent Shaker family  $K^+$  channel," *Science*, vol. 309, no. 5736, pp. 897–903, 2005.
- [12] C. S. Park and C. Miller, "Interaction of charybdotoxin with permeant ions inside the pore of a  $k^+$  channel," *Neuron*, vol. 9, no. 2, pp. 307–313, 1992.
- [13] A. Lange, K. Giller, S. Hornig et al., "Toxin-induced conformational changes in a potassium channel revealed by solid-state NMR," *Nature*, vol. 440, no. 7086, pp. 959–962, 2006.
- [14] K. N. Srinivasan, V. Sivaraja, I. Huys et al., "kappa-Hefutoxin1, a novel toxin from the scorpion *Heterometrus fulvipes* with unique structure and function. Importance of the functional diad in potassium channel selectivity," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 277, no. 33, pp. 30040–30047, 2002.
- [15] E. Diego-García, Y. Abdel-Mottaleb, E. F. Schwartz, R. C. R. De La Vega, J. Tytgat, and L. D. Possani, "Cytolytic and  $k^+$  channel blocking activities of  $\beta$ -KTx and scorpine-like peptides purified from scorpion venoms," *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, vol. 65, no. 1, pp. 187–200, 2008.
- [16] M. Corona, G. B. Gurrola, E. Merino et al., "A large number of novel Ergotoxin-like genes and ERG  $k^+$ -channels blocking peptides from scorpions of the genus *Centruroides*," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 532, no. 1–2, pp. 121–126, 2002.
- [17] N. Oukkache, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, F. Chgoury et al., "Identification des paramètres influençant la prise en charge de l'envenimation scorpionique au Maroc," in *Toxines et Cancer, Rencontres en Toxinologie*, pp. 295–300, LAVOISIER, 2006.
- [18] J. P. Rosso and H. Rochat, "Characterization of ten proteins from the venom of the Moroccan scorpion *Androctonus mauretanicus*, six of which are toxic to the mouse," *Toxicon*, vol. 23, no. 1, pp. 113–125, 1985.



- [19] H. Zerrouk, P. E. Bougis, B. Ceard, A. Benslimane, and M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, "Analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography of *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* (black scorpion) venom," *Toxicon*, vol. 29, no. 8, pp. 951–960, 1991.
- [20] M. Crest, G. Jacquet, M. Gola et al., "Kaliotoxin, a novel peptidyl inhibitor of neuronal BK-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{k}^+$  channels characterized from *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* venom," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 267, no. 3, pp. 1640–1647, 1992.
- [21] J. M. Sabatier, H. Zerrouk, H. Darbon et al., "P05, a new leiurotoxin I-like scorpion toxin: synthesis and structure-activity relationships of the  $\alpha$ -amidated analog, a ligand of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{k}^+$  channels with increased affinity," *Biochemistry*, vol. 32, no. 11, pp. 2763–2770, 1993.
- [22] H. Vacher, M. Alami, M. Crest, L. D. Possani, P. E. Bougis, and M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, "Expanding the scorpion toxin  $\alpha$ -KTX 15 family with AmmTX3 from *Androctonus mauretanicus*," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 269, no. 24, pp. 6037–6041, 2002.
- [23] N. Oukkache, J. P. Rosso, M. Alami et al., "New analysis of the toxic compounds from the *Androctonus mauretanicus mauretanicus* scorpion venom," *Toxicon*, vol. 51, no. 5, pp. 835–852, 2008.
- [24] J. Aiyar, J. M. Withka, J. P. Rizzi et al., "Topology of the pore-region of a  $\text{k}^+$  channel revealed by the NMR-derived structures of scorpion toxins," *Neuron*, vol. 15, no. 5, pp. 1169–1181, 1995.
- [25] J. C. Fontecilla-Camps, C. Habersetzer-Rochat, and H. Rochat, "Orthorhombic crystals and three-dimensional structure of the potent toxin II from the scorpion *Androctonus australis Hector*," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 85, no. 20, pp. 7443–7447, 1988.
- [26] H. Zerrouk, F. Laraba-Djebari, V. Fremont et al., "Characterization of PO15 a new peptide ligand of the apamin-sensitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activated  $\text{k}^+$  channel," *International Journal of Peptide and Protein Research*, vol. 48, no. 6, pp. 514–521, 1996.
- [27] Y. Abdel-Mottaleb, E. Clynen, A. Jalali et al., "The first potassium channel toxin from the venom of the Iranian scorpion *Odonthobuthus doriae*," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 580, no. 26, pp. 6254–6258, 2006.
- [28] H. Darbon, E. Blanc, and J. M. Sabatier, "Three-dimensional structure of scorpion toxins: toward a new model of interaction with potassium channels," *Perspectives in Drug Discovery and Design*, vol. 16, pp. 41–60, 1999.
- [29] P. Auguste, M. Hugues, B. Grave et al., "Leiurotoxin I (scyllatoxin), a peptide ligand for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{k}^+$  channels. Chemical synthesis, radiolabeling, and receptor characterization," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 265, no. 8, pp. 4753–4759, 1990.
- [30] G. G. Chicchi, G. Gimenez-Callego, E. Ber, M. L. Garcia, R. Winkist, and M. A. Cascieri, "Purification and characterization of a unique, potent inhibitor of apamin binding from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* venom," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 263, no. 21, pp. 10192–10197, 1988.
- [31] C. Labbe-Jullie, C. Granier, F. Albericio et al., "Binding and toxicity of apamin. Characterization of the active site," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 196, no. 3, pp. 639–645, 1991.
- [32] C. Devaux, M. Knibiehler, M. L. Defendini et al., "Recombinant and chemical derivatives of apamin. Implication of post-transcriptional C-terminal amidation of apamin in biological activity," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 231, no. 3, pp. 544–550, 1995.
- [33] M. Cui, J. Shen, J. M. Briggs et al., "Brownian dynamics simulations of the recognition of the scorpion toxin P05 with the small-conductance calcium-activated potassium channels," *Journal of Molecular Biology*, vol. 318, no. 2, pp. 417–428, 2002.
- [34] C. Brugnara, C. C. Armsby, L. De Franceschi, M. Crest, M. F. Martin Euclaire, and S. L. Alper, " $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{k}^+$  channels of human and rabbit erythrocytes display distinctive patterns of inhibition by venom peptide toxins," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 147, no. 1, pp. 71–82, 1995.
- [35] E. Honore, E. Guillemare, F. Lesage, J. Barhanin, and M. Lazdunski, "Injection of a  $\text{k}^+$  channel ( $\text{K}_{\text{v}}1.3$ ) cRNA in fertilized eggs leads to functional expression in cultured myotomal muscle cells from *Xenopus* embryos," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 348, no. 3, pp. 259–262, 1994.
- [36] M. D. Cahalan and K. G. Chandy, "The functional network of ion channels in T lymphocytes," *Immunological Reviews*, vol. 231, no. 1, pp. 59–87, 2009.
- [37] C. Beeton, J. Barbaria, P. Giraud et al., "Selective blocking of voltage-gated  $\text{k}^+$  channels improves experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and inhibits T cell activation," *Journal of Immunology*, vol. 166, no. 2, pp. 936–944, 2001.
- [38] P. Valverde, T. Kawai, and M. A. Taubman, "Selective blockade of voltage-gated potassium channels reduces inflammatory bone resorption in experimental periodontal disease," *Journal of Bone and Mineral Research*, vol. 19, no. 1, pp. 155–164, 2004.
- [39] C. Mourre, M. N. Chernova, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire et al., "Distribution in rat brain of binding sites of kaliotoxin, a blocker of  $\text{K}_{\text{v}}1.1$  and  $\text{K}_{\text{v}}1.3$   $\alpha$ -subunits," *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, vol. 291, no. 3, pp. 943–952, 1999.
- [40] S. Kourrich, C. Mourre, and B. Soumireu-Mourat, "Kaliotoxin, a  $\text{K}_{\text{v}}1.1$  and  $\text{K}_{\text{v}}1.3$  channel blocker, improves associative learning in rats," *Behavioural Brain Research*, vol. 120, no. 1, pp. 35–46, 2001.
- [41] R. Romi, M. Crest, M. Gola et al., "Synthesis and characterization of kaliotoxin. Is the 26-32 sequence essential for potassium channel recognition?" *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 268, no. 35, pp. 26302–26309, 1993.
- [42] G. M. Lipkind and H. A. Fozzard, "A model of scorpion toxin binding to voltage-gated  $\text{k}^+$  channels," *Journal of Membrane Biology*, vol. 158, no. 3, pp. 187–196, 1997.
- [43] C. Ader, R. Schneider, S. Hornig et al., "A structural link between inactivation and block of a  $\text{k}^+$  channel," *Nature Structural and Molecular Biology*, vol. 15, no. 6, pp. 605–612, 2008.
- [44] C. Ader, O. Pongs, S. Becker, and M. Baldus, "Protein dynamics detected in a membrane-embedded potassium channel using two-dimensional solid-state NMR spectroscopy," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1798, no. 2, pp. 286–290, 2010.
- [45] U. Zachariae, R. Schneider, P. Velisetty et al., "The molecular mechanism of toxin-induced conformational changes in a potassium channel: relation to C-type inactivation," *Structure*, vol. 16, no. 5, pp. 747–754, 2008.
- [46] M. Pisciotto, F. I. Coronas, C. Bloch, G. Prestipino, and L. D. Possani, "Fast  $\text{k}^+$  currents from cerebellum granular cells are completely blocked by a peptide purified from *Androctonus australis Garzoni* scorpion venom," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1468, no. 1-2, pp. 203–212, 2000.
- [47] H. Vacher, R. Romi-Lebrun, C. Mourre et al., "A new class of scorpion toxin binding sites related to an A-type  $\text{k}^+$  channel: pharmacological characterization and localization in rat brain," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 501, no. 1-3, pp. 31–36, 2001.
- [48] C. Legros, P. E. Bougis, and M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, "Characterisation of the genes encoding Aa1 isoforms from

- the scorpion *Androctonus australis*,” *Toxicon*, vol. 41, no. 1, pp. 115–119, 2003.
- [49] T. Chen, B. Walker, M. Zhou, and C. Shaw, “Molecular cloning of a novel putative potassium channel-blocking neurotoxin from the venom of the North African scorpion, *Androctonus amoreuxi*,” *Peptides*, vol. 26, no. 5, pp. 731–736, 2005.
- [50] M. C. Sanguinetti, J. H. Johnson, L. G. Hammerland et al., “Heteropodatoxins: peptides isolated from spider venom that block  $K_{v4.2}$  potassium channels,” *Molecular Pharmacology*, vol. 51, no. 3, pp. 491–498, 1997.
- [51] W. A. Coetzee, Y. Amarillo, J. Chiu et al., “Molecular diversity of  $k^+$  channels,” *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, vol. 868, pp. 233–285, 1999.
- [52] H. Vacher and J. S. Trimmer, “Diverse roles for auxiliary subunits in phosphorylation-dependent regulation of mammalian brain voltage-gated potassium channels,” *Pflügers Archiv European Journal of Physiology*, vol. 642, no. 5, pp. 631–643, 2011.
- [53] H. Vacher, S. Diochot, P. E. Bougis, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, and C. Mourre, “ $K_v4$  channels sensitive to BmTX3 in rat nervous system: autoradiographic analysis of their distribution during brain ontogenesis,” *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 24, no. 5, pp. 1325–1340, 2006.
- [54] Y. Abdel-Mottaleb, G. Corzo, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire et al., “A common “hot spot” confers hERG blockade activity to  $\alpha$ -scorpion toxins affecting  $k^+$  channels,” *Biochemical Pharmacology*, vol. 76, no. 6, pp. 805–815, 2008.
- [55] J. Amendola, A. Woodhouse, M. F. Martin-Eauclaire, and J. M. Goaillard, “ $Ca^{2+}$ /cAMP-Sensitive co-variation of IA and IH voltage dependences tune rebound firing in dopaminergic neurons,” *The Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 32, no. 6, pp. 2166–2181, 2012.
- [56] L. R. Phillips, M. Milescu, Y. Li-Smerin, J. A. Mindell, J. I. Kim, and K. J. Swartz, “Voltage-sensor activation with a tarantula toxin as cargo,” *Nature*, vol. 436, no. 7052, pp. 857–860, 2005.
- [57] H. Vacher, R. Romi-Lebrun, M. Crest et al., “Functional consequences of deleting the two C-terminal residues of the scorpion toxin BmTX3,” *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 1646, no. 1–2, pp. 152–156, 2003.
- [58] G. N. Tseng, K. D. Sonawane, Y. V. Korolkova et al., “Probing the outer mouth structure of the hERG channel with peptide toxin footprinting and molecular modeling,” *Biophysical Journal*, vol. 92, no. 10, pp. 3524–3540, 2007.
- [59] R. C. Rodríguez De La Vega, E. Merino, B. Becerril, and L. D. Possani, “Novel interactions between  $k^+$  channels and scorpion toxins,” *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*, vol. 24, no. 5, pp. 222–227, 2003.
- [60] I. Huys, C. Q. Xu, C. Z. Wang et al., “BmTx3, a scorpion toxin with two putative functional faces separately active on A-type  $k^+$  and HERG currents,” *Biochemical Journal*, vol. 378, no. 3, pp. 745–752, 2004.

## Review Article

# Nervous System of *Periplaneta americana* Cockroach as a Model in Toxinological Studies: A Short Historical and Actual View

Maria Stankiewicz,<sup>1</sup> Marcin Dąbrowski,<sup>1</sup> and Maria Elena de Lima<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Biophysics Laboratory, Institute of General and Molecular Biology, N. Copernicus University, 87-100 Torun, Poland

<sup>2</sup>Departamento de Bioquímica e Imunologia, Instituto de Ciências Biológicas, Universidade Federal de Minas Gerais, Belo Horizonte, 31270-901 MG, Brazil

Correspondence should be addressed to Maria Stankiewicz, stankiew@umk.pl

Received 6 January 2012; Accepted 1 March 2012

Academic Editor: Yonghua Ji

Copyright © 2012 Maria Stankiewicz et al. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Nervous system of *Periplaneta americana* cockroach is used in a wide range of pharmacological studies, including electrophysiological techniques. This paper presents its role as a preparation in the development of toxinological studies in the following electrophysiological methods: double-oil-gap technique on isolated giant axon, patch-clamp on DUM (dorsal unpaired median) neurons, microelectrode technique *in situ* conditions on axon in connective and DUM neurons in ganglion, and single-fiber oil-gap technique on last abdominal ganglion synapse. At the end the application of cockroach synaptosomal preparation is mentioned.

## 1. Introduction

The cockroach, especially the *Periplaneta americana* species, is recognized as a very useful model in neurobiological studies [1]. The field of toxinology owes much to the use of various nervous preparations obtained from this insect. *Periplaneta americana* represents an excellent model applied in different pharmacological methods, especially in electrophysiology, which plays a vital part in most of research activity in toxinology. It may be based on using natural and “artificial” preparations, as for example the transfected *Xenopus* oocytes. A wide range of nervous functions have been described on the basis of studies on various parts of cockroach nervous system (Figure 1(a)) and the experiments can be performed on natural models. Biophysical principles of the nervous system function in insects are much the same as in mammals. In both groups of animals similar neurotransmitters can be found, although their distribution varies. Thus the observations made on the cockroach can nearly be applied in vertebrates. On the other hand, some arthropod neurotoxins show high selectivity to insect nervous system and they are considered as potent bioinsecticides. Cockroach model has been largely used for the description of their mode of action. In the

following paragraphs, various electrophysiological methods using cockroach preparations will be presented, along with their contribution to the development of toxinology.

## 2. Giant Axon and Single-Fiber Double-Oil-Gap Method

Cell body and the dendritic tree of the *P. americana* giant interneurons, located in the last abdominal ganglion, have been well identified for a long time. They possess unmyelinated, very long (1.5–2 cm), large diameter (up to 50  $\mu$ m) axons. The axons, being surrounded by glial Schwann cells, can be isolated manually (Figure 1(b)) under microscope, and their activity can be observed using the double-oil-gap method—a refined electrophysiological technique—Figure 2(a) [2–5]. Such axonal preparation exhibits simple bioelectrical properties; one type of voltage-dependent sodium and potassium (Kdr) channels can be found; they are responsible for generating short (0.5 ms) action potentials. Double-oil-gap technique permits, in current-clamp, to evoke large (up to 100 mV) axonal action potentials (Figure 2(b)(A)), to follow their evolution and to control the resting potential as well as the level of local response. Passive characteristics

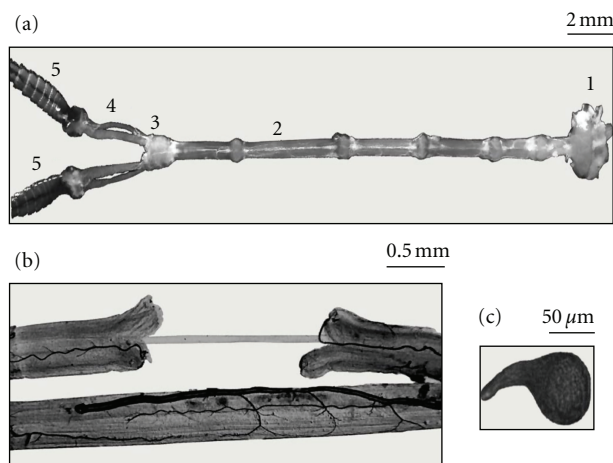


FIGURE 1: Cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*) nervous system. (a) Isolated abdominal nerve cord with last thoracic (1) ganglion and cercal nerves (4) linked to cerci (5). Giant axon is isolated from one connective between the 4th and the 5th ganglion (2). DUM neurons and cercal nerve-giant interneuron synapses are located in last abdominal ganglion (3). (b) Isolated giant axon dissected from one connective, accompanied by the second connective which protects the axon when the preparation is transferred to experimental chamber; axon diameter  $\sim 50 \mu\text{m}$ . (c) Isolated DUM neuron.

of axonal membrane (resistance and capacitance) can be analyzed using longer (e.g., 5 ms) hyperpolarizing pulses (Figure 2(b)(B)); the application of long depolarizing pulses allows to observe delayed rectification (Figure 2(b)(B)).

In voltage-clamp configuration, depolarizing voltage pulses induce a short, inwardly directed, tetrodotoxin-sensitive sodium current and delayed, noninactivating outward potassium current (Figure 2(d)), most sensitive to 3,4 diaminopyridine [6]; hyperpolarizing pulses are used to record the leak current. At holding potential of  $-60 \text{ mV}$ , about 50% of sodium current is inactivated; this inactivation is completely removed when the HP reaches  $-80 \text{ mV}$  and, in these conditions, a larger current can be observed, similarly to what has been reported by Pichon [2] (Figure 2(e)). Double-oil-gap method has several advantages: (1) the recordings are stable and long-lasting (up to 1 hour), (2) various experimental protocols in current-clamp as well in voltage-clamp can be applied, (3) the quantity of the tested molecules can be very small (e.g.,  $0.2 \text{ mL } 10^{-7} \text{ M}$  in the case of a highly active substance), (4) it is inexpensive. However, the preparation of an isolated axon is a sophisticated procedure and requires much experience.

The activity of giant axon can also be recorded in *in situ* conditions in the whole nerve cord [7]. In such case, axon is left on its place in nervous chain, stays in contact with others axons and its microenvironment is much less changed compared to isolated axon. After one connective is desheathed, the giant axons become accessible for microelectrodes. Introducing them allows to record the exact axonal resting potential in its *semi*-physiological microenvironment. Extracellular stimulation, even performed from some mm distance, evokes action potentials similar in size and amplitude to action potential recorded from the isolated axon (Figure 2(c)), however, long-pulse stimulation can only accelerate the generation of action potential. The accessibility of the axon *in situ* to the tested molecules is

much more limited, however, their effect can be considered more physiological in such conditions.

Double-oil-gap method has been used in toxinological studies for many years. The long history of anti-insect scorpion toxins started with this technique, when in the 1970–80s the toxins purified from North African scorpions (*Androctonus australis* Hector—AaH IT and *Buthus judaicus*—Bj IT) by Professor Eliahu Zlotkin and collaborators from the Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel, and Faculté de Médecine, Marseille, France [8], were tested for the first time on cockroach isolated giant axon by electrophysiologist Professor Marcel Pelhate, at Angers University, France [9, 10]. Toxicity tests and biochemical studies, especially by means of binding assays, established the specificity of this toxin, which has been confirmed by electrophysiological experiments. In the subsequent years, the story developed with the application of more and more modern methods and presently many details of arthropod toxins' selectivity to insects are known [11–13]. Their applicability as bioinsecticides is now under consideration [12, 14, 15].

Scorpion toxins, active on sodium channels, are divided into two large groups: *alpha* and *beta* toxins, modifying mainly the channels' inactivation and activation, respectively [12, 13, 16, 17]. Among *alpha* toxins, an *alpha*-like subgroup has been established [18, 19]. The insect-selective toxins, depressant and excitatory, are *beta* toxins. Several toxins related to these groups were tested and their mode of action was determined using the single-fiber oil-gap method. It helped to discriminate between excitatory and depressant groups of toxins. The most distinctive features of axonal bioelectric activity modification induced by excitatory toxins (AaH IT1 from *Androctonus australis* Hector, Bj IT1 from *Buthus judaicus*—[9, 10, 20]; Bm 32-VI and Bm 33-I from *Buthus martensi*—[21]; are a slight depolarization, a decrease in threshold for action potential generation (Figure 3(a)(A) and (B)), and the repetitive activity instead of a single

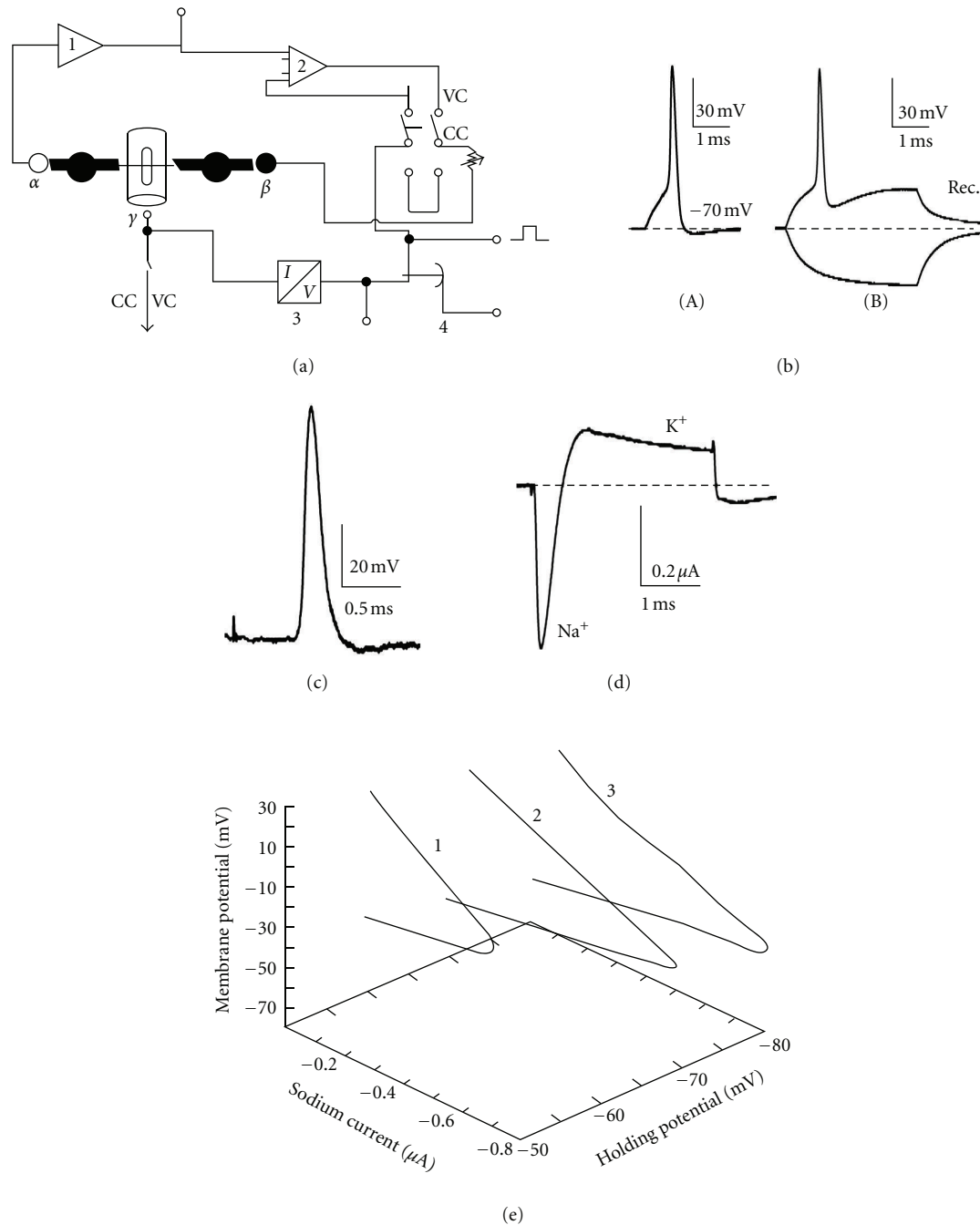


FIGURE 2: Single-fiber double-oil-gap method on isolated giant axon. (a) Electronic arrangement of technique for current- and voltage-clamp recordings (CC and VC, resp.)—according to [4].  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the lateral (recording and stimulating) electrodes immersed in 180 mM KCl—they have contact with the cut ends of axons in connective and represent intracellular electrodes;  $\gamma$  electrode is plunged in physiological saline (with the tested substances)—it has contact with the extracellular side of the isolated axon. Amplifier 1 is a high-input impedance, negative capacitance amplifier, 2—high-gain differential amplifier, 3—current-to-voltage converter; 4—analogue compensator for leakage and fast and slow capacitive currents. In CC  $\gamma$  electrode is grounded and resistor = 3 M $\Omega$ . (b)(A) Action potential evoked by a 0.5 ms depolarizing current pulse. (b)(B) The effect of long symmetrical current pulses: the hyperpolarizing one—used to estimate the passive axonal membrane properties and the depolarizing one—used to observe the membrane rectification (Rec.). (c) Action potential recorded from *in situ* giant axon using microelectrode. (d) Total current recorded under voltage pulse from holding potential -70 mV to -10 mV;  $K^+$ —potassium component,  $Na^+$ —sodium component. (e) Voltage-dependence of sodium current recorded at various holding potentials: -1: -60, 2: -70 and 3: -80 mV. The points (not shown) for curves are mean values from 5 experiments performed in control conditions. Note that at holding potential of -60 mV, about 50% of  $Na$  current is inactivated.



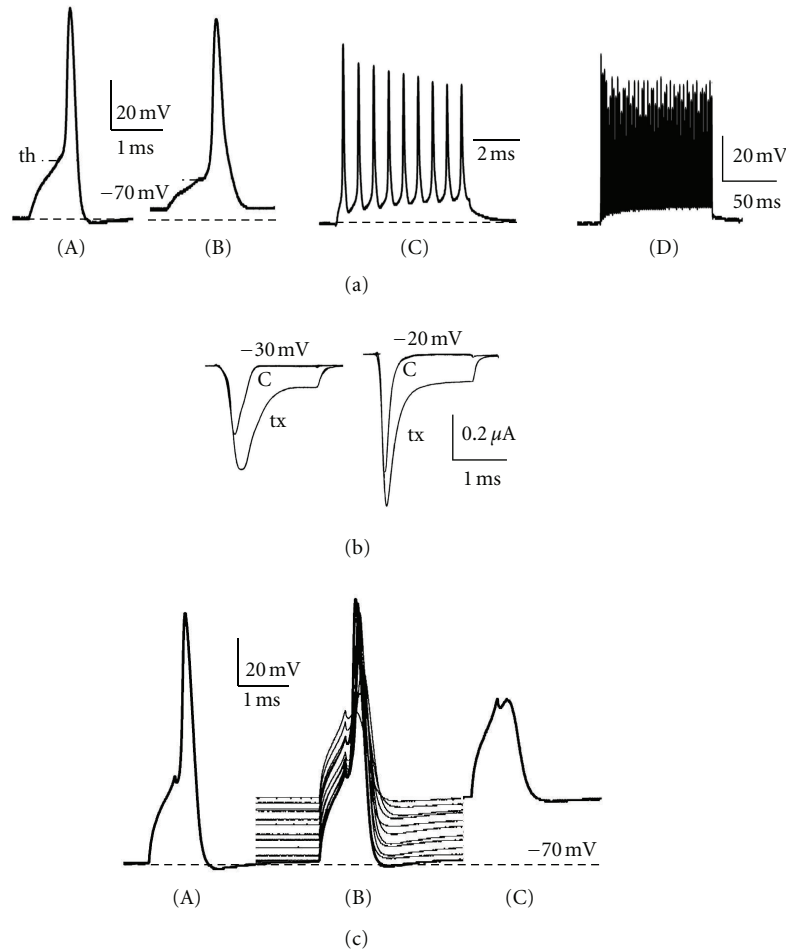


FIGURE 3: The effects of beta group of scorpion toxins on axonal bioelectrical activity. (a) The effect of Bj-xtrIT—a recombinant excitatory anti-insect toxin from *Buthus judaicus* scorpion: (A) control action potential; (B) action potential recorded from the same axon in 10 min of toxin action ( $10^{-7}$  M)—note much lower threshold (th) for action potential generation and a slight membrane depolarization; (C) repetitive activity evoked after artificial repolarization of axonal membrane and stimulation with single, short (0.5 ms) current pulse; (D) long duration, high frequency repetitive activity observed after the artificial membrane hyperpolarization to  $-80$  mV—activity was evoked by a single, short stimulation. (b) Bigger and prolonged sodium current recorded after 10 min of Bj-xtrIT presence (tx,  $10^{-7}$  M) compared to control (c); currents were elicited with voltage pulses from HP =  $-70$  mV to  $-30$  and  $-20$  mV. (c) Axonal activity modified by Lqh IT2 ( $10^{-6}$  M)—anti-insect depressant toxin. (A) control action potential and (B) the progressive decrease of its amplitude together with the membrane depolarization induced by toxin; (C) block of action potential generation observed after 15 min of toxin action.

response to current stimulation (Figure 3(a)(C)). The ability of the axon to generate such bursting discharges manifested itself especially when it was artificially repolarized or hyperpolarized (Figure 3(a)(D)). Exalted axonal excitability resulted from the increase in sodium current amplitude at negative membrane potentials and its prolongation observed under voltage pulse (Figure 3(b)). The analysis of sodium current voltage dependence revealed a shift in sodium current voltage dependence towards more negative membrane potentials [20]. In toxicity tests, these toxins caused an immediate contraction paralysis of fly larvae and a quick excitatory “knock-down” effect on locusts [8, 10], which remains consistent with the observations done in electrophysiological experiments.

The name “depressant toxins” comes from the flaccid paralysis they cause in fly larvae. The toxins within this

group (Bj IT2—[10]; toxin from *Scorpio maurus palmatus* venom—[22]; Bot IT3 and BoT IT4 from *Buthus occitanus tunetanus*—[23, 24]; BmK ITa and BmK ITb from *Buthus martensi* Karsch—[23]; Lqh IT2—[25] evidently increase sodium permeability at resting potential, inducing relatively fast depolarization and distinct decrease in action potential amplitude (Figure 3(c)(A) and (B)), eventually blocking the conduction (Figure 3(c)(C)). In voltage-clamp experiments, the lowering of peak sodium current was observed, however, along with a development of a constant current, at holding potential equal to axonal resting potential, that is,  $-60$  mV.

There have also been cases of finding toxins of which the effects on axonal electrophysiological activity appear intermediate between those of excitatory and depressant groups, for instance: BcTx1 from East African scorpion *Babycurus centrurimorphus* [26] or BoT IT2, which, moreover, induced

a new, unusual current with slow activation/deactivation kinetics [23, 24, 27]. Bot IT2 is insect-selective; its binding site is similar to that one of AaH IT1 excitatory toxin, but amino acid sequence resembles the ones found in depressant toxins [23, 24]. Similar modification of axonal bioelectrical activity by Bot IT2 has been evidenced using a toxin from the venom of ant, *Paraponera clavata*, also tested on the cockroach isolated axon [28].

The comparative analysis of electrophysiological effects of several excitatory and depressant toxins suggests that the discrimination between these two groups of toxins is not always easy and certainly not possible only on the basis of bioelectrical activity modifications. Parallel biochemical and structural studies are absolutely required. As mentioned above, these two groups of toxins belong to one very large group of *beta* toxins that bind to receptor 4 on sodium channel [13, 14, 17].

Toxin VII from South American scorpion, *Tityus serrulatus*, is a typical *beta* toxin with no selectivity to any group of organisms [29, 30]. Its effect on cockroach axon can also be described as intermediate between those of excitatory and depressant toxins. In the presence of the toxin, resting depolarization was observed jointly with a tendency to repetitive discharges. Sodium current was activated at more negative potential than normally; it was prolonged, but holding current development was slower than in the case of depressant toxins [31].

Scorpion *alpha* toxins bind to the receptor site 3 on sodium channel and inhibit the channel's inactivation [12]. In voltage-clamp experiments, short sodium current is prolonged during depolarizing voltage pulse (Figure 4(b)); potassium current is not modified. In current-clamp, short action potentials are extended and transformed into *plateau* action potentials (Figure 4(a)). Such effects were observed when the first anti-insect toxin Lqh $\alpha$ IT from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* scorpion venom was tested on cockroach isolated axon [32, 33]. Later, several new anti-insect toxins with similar Lqh $\alpha$ IT characteristics were described, as for example BoT IT1 [23, 24].

*Alpha* toxin (Lqh $\alpha$ IT) was also tested on cockroach giant axon in *in situ* conditions. The first observed effect, after the toxin's application, was a repetitive generation of slightly prolonged action potentials in response to short stimulation—such effect has never been observed in the experiments on isolated giant axon (Figure 4(c)). Later on, *plateau* action potential sometimes appeared (Figure 4(d)), but it was never as long in duration as in the case of isolated axon, even after a prolonged application of high toxin concentration. The influence of axonal microenvironment created by glial cells and other axons is a very likely factor in this matter. And it is necessary to consider the fact that the experimental conditions may vary from the physiological ones in a very diverse degree, which in turn may affect significantly the effects of the tested molecules.

Electrophysiological experiments performed on the cockroach axon helped to define a new group of scorpion neurotoxins: the *alpha*-like toxins. Receptor site of these molecules overlaps with receptor site 3 on sodium channel, where *alpha* toxins bind [18, 19]. *Alpha*-like toxins do not

express selectivity toward insect or mammalian sodium channels. Pharmacological characteristics of *alpha*-like toxins are similar but not identical with those of *alpha* neurotoxins. They induce *plateau* potentials, but in addition, they depolarize progressively the axonal membrane. They inhibit the inactivation of sodium current, but to a lesser degree than in the case of Lqh $\alpha$ IT. Moreover, a tail current appears, which increases when depolarizing pulses are applied repeatedly (every 5 s) and at the same time, the peak sodium current decreases [18, 19].

Along with the science progressing, modern techniques in molecular biology were applied and a “new era” in scorpion anti-insect toxins launched. One of the most noteworthy approaches towards this issue so far have been presented by Professor Michael Gurevitz and Dr. Dalia Gordon from the Department of Molecular Biology and Ecology of Plants, Tel Aviv University, Israel. They and their collaborators isolated the genetic material responsible for the synthesis of toxins from the scorpion venom, they defined the cDNA sequence and developed artificial expression systems [33–36]. New, recombinant toxins Lqh $\alpha$ ITr [36], Lqh IT2 [37] and Bj-xtrIT [38], tested on the cockroach isolated giant axon, showed much resemblance in their mode of action to the native counterparts. Such studies provided an extremely valuable conclusion: the activity of properly prepared recombinant toxins is the same as that of the native ones. This was a huge step in the field of toxinology. Nowadays, the recombinant toxins are accessible in a greater number than the native molecules and the advent of further mutations is feasible. It is pivotal now to study the molecular basis of anti-insect selectivity, as well as anti-mammalian specificity.

Toxicity tests, binding studies and electrophysiological recordings along with the molecular modeling, gene cloning and the site-directed mutagenesis create an opportunity to investigate the molecular basis of toxins' activity. The experiments performed on *alpha*-like toxins from *Buthus martensi* Karsch using cockroach axon showed that mutation of a single amino acid can change completely the toxin mode of action [39]. A phrase: “a story of one amino acid” may well summarize the long history of multiapproach studies on depressant toxins from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus*. In the experiments on the isolated axon of the cockroach, it has been shown that the replacement of the amino acid in position 58 from Asn to Asp is able to change completely the toxin's mode of action. At the same time, its affinity to sodium channel target and its toxicity decreased. Conclusion from these studies was as follows: Asn in position 58 plays the mandatory role in the activity of depressant toxins [13, 40].

The isolated axon of the cockroach was also used in the tests on the toxins obtained from the spider venom. In most cases they prolonged the duration of action potential, however, *plateau* action potential could only be generated in the presence of a potassium channel blocker. Sodium current inactivation was inhibited in the presence of the toxin, but never to such a degree as in the case of scorpion *alpha* toxins [41–43]. Postapplication of Lqh $\alpha$ IT increased the late sodium current recorded during depolarizing pulse (Stankiewicz, personal observations).

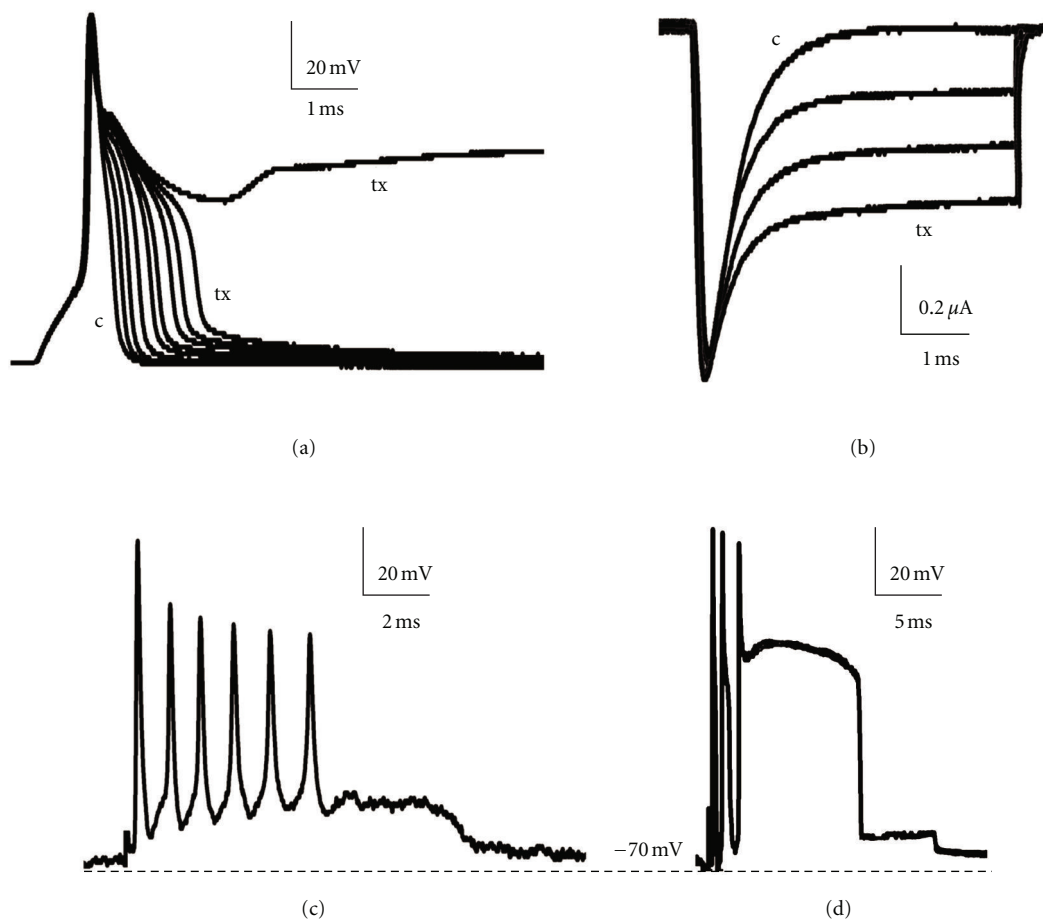


FIGURE 4: (a) The effect of LqhαIT ( $10^{-7}$  M)—recombinant anti-insect  $\alpha$  toxin from *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus* venom on axonal action potential; c—control action potential, tx—progressive increase of action potential duration until plateau action potential under toxin. (b) sodium current prolonged until the end of depolarizing pulse in toxin presence (tx). (c) Repetitive discharges induced by LqhαIT ( $5 \times 10^{-6}$  M) recorded from the axon in connective (*in situ*), using microelectrode technique; connective was stimulated by extracellular silver electrodes through an isolated unit. (d) Plateau action potential generated sometimes by axon *in situ* in toxin presence.

### 3. DUM Neurons in Patch-Clamp and Microelectrode Techniques

In 1989 and 1990 two articles describing the application of patch-clamp technique in the study on the activity of neurosecretory dorsal unpaired median (DUM—Figure 1(c)) neurons from terminal ganglion of *Periplaneta americana* nerve cord were published [44, 45]. The technique of single DUM cell isolation and patch-clamp recording on it have been developed in Laboratory of Neurophysiology at Angers University in France by Professor Bruno Lapied. DUM neurons possess an endogenous pacemaker activity which depends on a wide range of ionic membrane conductances [46]. Various types of receptors provide a very precise regulation of the neurons' spontaneous activity and neurosecretory function. DUM neurons represent an outstanding model for studies on intracellular processes [47–49] as well as for pharmacological tests [50, 51]. They have also been used in toxicological experiments.

There were several experiments on DUM cells performed simultaneously with observations on an isolated

axon. Although DUM neurons represent a much more complex model of bioelectrical activity than the axon, the observations were similar and the conclusions-compatible [25, 52]. Background sodium channels (bNa) in DUM neurons were examined using the patch-clamp cell-attached technique [53]. They appeared to be a new target for LqhαIT toxin, even more sensitive than the classical voltage-dependent Na channels in this preparation. The activity of bNa is limited at membrane potential  $-50$  mV (DUM neuron resting potential) and can be “liberated” under LqhαIT action or at very negative ( $-90$  mV) membrane potential. In the presence of the toxin ( $10^{-8}$  M), unclustered, brief single channel openings in control (at  $-50$  mV) were transformed into large, multistep amplitude bursting activity, separated by periods of silence. Open probability of the channels increased by about 20-fold. Such channel activity was well corresponding to the transformation observed in DUM neurons: from regular beating, spontaneous activity to rhythmic bursting [53, 54].

Background sodium channels in DUM neurons are also the target for  $\beta$  toxin (VII) from Brazilian scorpion,

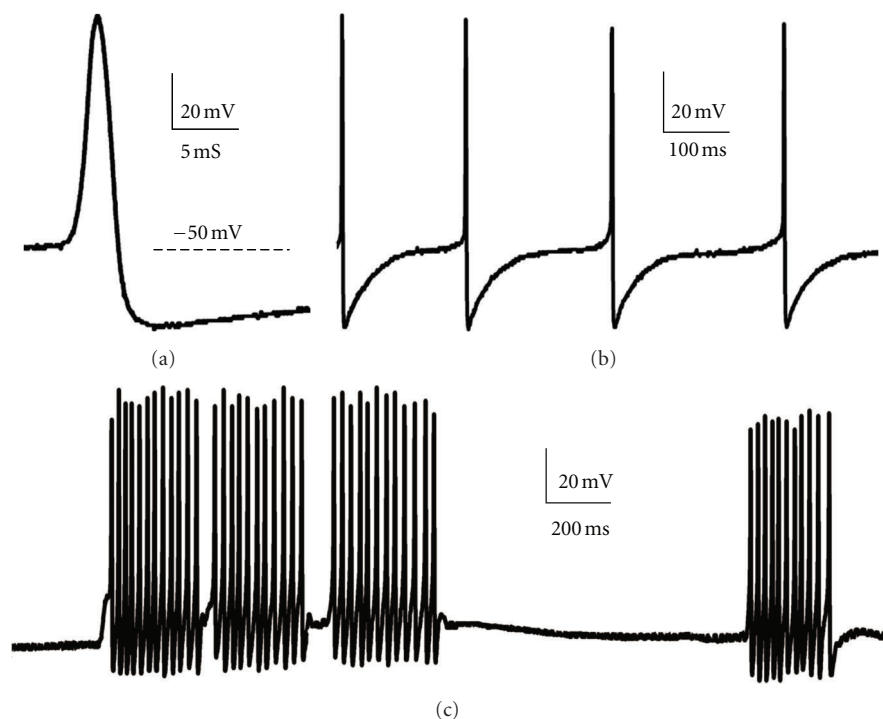


FIGURE 5: Activity of dorsal unpaired median (DUM) neurons from terminal abdominal ganglion, examined with the microelectrode technique. (a) Single action potential and (b) regular spontaneous activity recorded from the neuron in the ganglion—in *in situ* conditions, in control. (c) Radical change of neuron regular beating discharges into bursting activity in Lqh $\alpha$ IT ( $10^{-6}$  M) presence.

*Tityus serrulatus*, venom [55]. In the toxin's presence, single-amplitude openings of the channels were replaced by events with several distinct subconductance current levels. Channel open probability rose by about 50-fold and similarly did the open-time duration; additionally, very long duration events emerged. Classical voltage-dependent sodium channels were also modified in a manner typical for *beta* toxin. The experiments performed with calcium imaging demonstrated the rise in the intracellular calcium concentration in the presence of toxin VII. A very complex study of this phenomenon evidenced the participation of high-voltage activated N-type calcium channels and the activation of noncapacitative calcium entry (NCCE). An important conclusion has been drawn from these studies that the reduction of the activity of NCCE may prove a useful strategy in the development of a drug for antivenom therapy [55].

The activity of DUM neurons can also be observed in *in situ* conditions using the microelectrode technique. Terminal abdominal ganglion is separated from the nerve cord, desheated and fixed. Neurons remain in their place in ganglion surrounded by glial cells and other neurons. DUM neurons are recognized by spontaneous action potentials when the microelectrode enters the cell. The pattern of neuronal activity is similar to the recordings obtained on isolated cells, however, the effect of toxins is not exactly the same. The application of *alpha* toxin (Lqh $\alpha$ IT,  $10^{-5}$  and  $10^{-4}$  M) never induced *plateau* action potential *in situ*; only transformation from regular firing into bursting activity was observed and the bursts were generated from a level of

slight depolarization (Figure 5(c)). In the ganglion, DUM cells are mainly under the influence of glial cells, as well as other neurons; thus, the ionic microenvironment remains partially undisturbed. In order to investigate the toxin's mechanism of action, isolated neurons should be used by all means, however, *in situ* experiments may in some cases reveal more on physiological effect of toxic molecules. The interactions between two neurotoxins observed on isolated and *in situ* DUM cells are also different (Stankiewicz et al., in preparation).

#### 4. Cercal Nerve—Giant Interneuron Synapse and Single-Fiber Oil-Gap Technique

The information about mechanical stimulation arising in the cockroach cercal sensory neurons is transmitted to giant interneurons. Cercal nerves X and XI are connected with giant interneurone dendritic tree by inhibitory and excitatory synapses, respectively, located in the last abdominal ganglion. The activity of these synapses can be observed using the single-fiber oil-gap technique (Figure 6(a)), developed by Professor Jean-Jacques Callec in Rennes University [56, 57], later improved and applied for several years by Professor Bernard Hue from Laboratory of Neurophysiology at Angers University, France [58–60]. This method allows the extracellular recording of spontaneous and evoked excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSP) as well as inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSP) [57, 60, 61]. Nerve XI is classified as excitatory and its fibers activate nicotinic receptors at

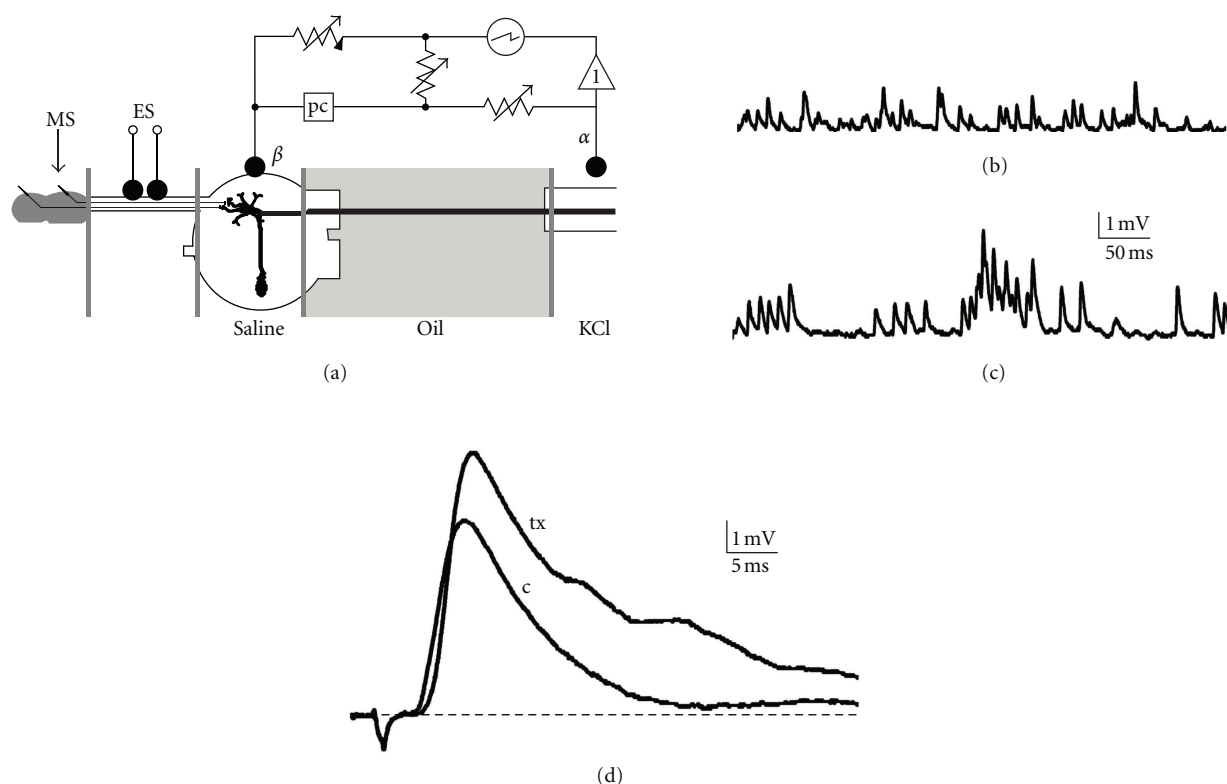


FIGURE 6: Single-fiber oil-gap method applied for studying synaptic transmission between cercal nerve and giant interneurone. (a) The scheme of electronic circuit used to record postsynaptic events. Recording electrode ( $\alpha$ ) bathed in isotonic KCl solution is connected with high-input impedance, negative capacitance amplifier (1); extracellular electrode  $\beta$  is in contact with last abdominal ganglion. Wheatstone bridge is connected to recording circuit and it is used to apply polarizing current (pc) through postsynaptic membrane. The desheated ganglion is superfused with saline or test solution. The dissected axon is bathed in paraffin-oil. MS—mechanical stimulation, ES—electrical stimulation applied to cercal nerve (according to [59, 60]). (b) Control conditions—unitary excitatory postsynaptic potentials (uEPSP) recorded as spontaneous activity of preparation and (d) c—control excitatory compound postsynaptic potential (cEPSP) observed as the effect of cercal nerve electrical stimulation. (c) The increased spontaneous activity (uEPSPs) and (d) tx—cEPSPs observed 10 min after Lqh $\alpha$ IT ( $10^{-6}$  M) application using pneumatic injection in synapse vicinity.

postsynaptic membrane. Unitary excitatory postsynaptic potentials (uEPSP) result from the stimulation of single hair mechanoreceptors covering the cercus; composed postsynaptic potentials (cEPSP) are the effect of cercal nerve XI electrical stimulation. At the presynaptic face of such synapses, muscarinic receptors are present, the role of which is to regulate the acetylcholine releasing by negative feedback [62]. Muscarinic receptors were also found on postsynaptic membrane [63]. Stimulation of nerve X evokes inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSP) via activation of GABA receptors [61]. Single-fiber oil-gap method allows to perform long-term experiments (even up to 12 hours) and well-adjusted perfusion of the ganglion enables to obtain reliable dose-response curves. Using the iontophoretic application of acetylcholine or carbachol to postsynaptic membrane vicinity permits to discriminate between pre- and postsynaptic action of the tested drugs. Synaptic preparation from the cockroach represents a remarkably useful model for pharmacological studies, however, obtaining a high-quality stable preparation requires much experience.

Cockroach synaptic model allowed to test the toxins which are active on cholinergic receptors. Snake venom is

a well-known source for them. *Alpha*-bungarotoxins and k-bungarotoxins completely blocked uEPSP and cEPSP at concentration of  $10^{-7}$  M. All performed experimental protocols indicated that the toxins block neuronal postsynaptic nicotinic receptors and  $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin was more effective [64, 65]. Scorpion *alpha* toxin Lqh $\alpha$ IT induced a substantial increase in the postsynaptic spontaneous activity, that is, in the frequency and the amplitude of uEPSP (Figures 6(b) and 6(c)), as well as in the amplitude and duration of cEPSP (Figure 6(d)). Higher presynaptic activity results in the increased releasing of acetylcholine, however, it activates the negative feedback via presynaptic muscarinic receptors in turn and after several minutes of the toxin's action, a decrease in postsynaptic events can be observed (Stankiewicz, personal observations).

The experiments performed using the single-fiber oil-gap method with the scolopendra, *Scolopendra* sp., venom determined its components which induced the depolarization of the cockroach postsynaptic membrane and the decrease in EPSP amplitude. Such effect was limited after pretreatment with atropine. Along with the studies performed on *Drosophila* muscarinic receptors (Dm1) expressed



in *Xenopus* oocytes, it was evidenced that the venom of scolopendra comprises a component acting as agonist on insect muscarinic receptors [66].

Lastly, the experiments performed on cockroach synaptic preparation contributed to studies which allowed to explain the mechanism of synergistic interaction between chemical neurotoxins: pyrethroids (permethrin) and carbamates (propoxur) [67]. The conclusions from these studies are important for practical implementation in the field of crop protection.

## 5. Synaptosomal Preparation from Cockroach Nerve Cord

The nerve cords of cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*) have also been used to prepare synaptosomes, which are functional vesicles containing the nervous terminals. The synaptosomal preparation is easy to obtain and has been applied in several pharmacological tests. As illustration, binding assays of many radiolabeled toxins have been successfully characterized with synaptosomes [24, 42, 43, 68]. In addition, studies of photoaffinity labeling using  $^{125}\text{I}$  TsVII as a ligand in synaptosomes of nerve cord from cockroach indicated for the first time the molecular weight of the scorpion toxin receptor from the insect nervous system which was suggested to be associated with voltage sensitive  $\text{Na}^+$  channels [68]. More recently this preparation was also successfully applied in binding studies involving radiolabelled spider toxins acting in sodium channels (De Lima, in preparation). Results obtained from electrophysiological experiments are often completed using synaptosomal preparation coming from cockroach nervous system.

## 6. Summary

Nervous system of the cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*) can be recognized as a remarkably useful model preparation in multiple electrophysiological techniques, which allows to perform pharmacological tests on diverse levels of nervous system organization. Confronting the results obtained reveals that a toxin may affect the activity of the same nervous structure with diverse effects, depending on the experimental conditions and this conclusion should be taken into account prior to any definite statement concerning the mode of action of any toxin.

## Acknowledgments

Work was supported by the Ministry of Science and Higher Education of Poland; Grant no. N N303 320637. M. de Lima has been supported by FAPEMIG, CAPES, CNPq, and INCT-TOX Grants in Brazil. M. Dąbrowski is a beneficiary of Ph. D. grant within the Project "Enhancing Educational Potential of Nicolaus Copernicus University in the Disciplines of Mathematical and Natural Sciences; (Project no. POKL.04.01.01-00-081/10)," Poland. Maria Stankiewicz expresses great gratitude to Professor Marcel Pelhate, Professor Bernard Hue, and Professor Bruno Lapiéd from Laboratoire de

Neurophysiologie (at present Récepteurs et Canaux Ioniques Membranaires) at Angers University, France, for teaching her all the techniques on the cockroach described in the paper and for their generous placing at her disposal all the facilities in their laboratory during many years. Many thanks also to all collaborators, especially to Dr. Dalia Gordon and Professor Michael Gurevitz from Tel Aviv University, Israel.

## References

- [1] I. Huber, E. P. Masler, and B. R. Rao, Eds., *Cockroaches as Models for Neurobiology: Applications in Biomedical Research*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, USA, 1990.
- [2] Y. Pichon, *Aspects électriques et ioniques du fonctionnement nerveux chez les insectes. Cas particulier de la chaîne nerveuse abdominale d'une blatte Periplaneta americana L.*, dissertation, These d'Etat, Rennes, France, 1969.
- [3] Y. Pichon and J. Boistel, "Current-voltage relations in the isolated giant axon of the cockroach under voltage-clamp conditions," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 47, no. 2, pp. 343–355, 1967.
- [4] M. Pelhate and D. B. Sattelle, "Pharmacological properties of insect axons: a review," *Journal of Insect Physiology*, vol. 28, no. 11, pp. 889–903, 1982.
- [5] M. Pelhate, Y. Pichon, and D. J. Beadle, "Cockroach axons and cell bodies: electrical activity," in *Cockroaches as Models for Neurobiology: Applications in Biomedical Research*, I. Huber, E. P. Masler, and B. R. Rao, Eds., pp. 131–148, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, USA, 1990.
- [6] M. Pelhate and Y. Pichon, "Selective inhibition of potassium current in the giant axon of the cockroach," *The Journal of Physiology*, vol. 343, pp. 90–91P, 1974.
- [7] Y. Pichon and J. Boistel, "Microelectrode study of the resting and action potentials of the cockroach giant axon with special reference to the role played by the nerve sheath," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 47, no. 2, pp. 357–373, 1967.
- [8] E. Zlotkin, H. Rochat, Kopeyan, F. Miranda, and S. Lissitzky, "Purification and properties of the insect toxin from the venom of the scorpion *Androctonus australis* Hector," *Biochimie*, vol. 53, no. 10, pp. 1073–1078, 1971.
- [9] M. Pelhate and E. Zlotkin, "Actions of insect toxin and other toxins derived from the venom of the scorpion *Androctonus australis* on isolated giant axons of the cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*)," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 97, pp. 67–77, 1982.
- [10] D. Lester, P. Lazarovici, M. Pelhate, and E. Zlotkin, "Purification, characterization and action of two insect toxins from the venom of the scorpion *Buthus judaicus*," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, vol. 701, pp. 370–381, 1982.
- [11] I. Karbat, F. Frolow, O. Froy et al., "Molecular basis of the high insecticidal potency of scorpion  $\alpha$ -toxins," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 279, no. 30, pp. 31679–31686, 2004.
- [12] D. Gordon, I. Karbat, N. Ilan et al., "The differential preference of scorpion  $\alpha$ -toxins for insect or mammalian sodium channels: implications for improved insect control," *Toxicon*, vol. 49, no. 4, pp. 452–472, 2007.
- [13] M. Gurevitz, I. Karbat, L. Cohen et al., "The insecticidal potential of scorpion  $\beta$ -toxins," *Toxicon*, vol. 49, no. 4, pp. 473–489, 2007.
- [14] D. Gordon, "Sodium channels as targets for neurotoxins. Mode of action and interaction of neurotoxins with receptor

- sites on sodium channels," in *Toxins and Signal Transduction*, Y. Gutman and P. Lazarovici, Eds., pp. 119–153, Harwood, The Netherlands, 1997.
- [15] N. Gilles, M. Gurevitz, and D. Gordon, "Allosteric interactions among pyrethroid, brevetoxin, and scorpion toxin receptors on insect sodium channels raise an alternative approach for insect control," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 540, no. 1-3, pp. 81–85, 2003.
  - [16] F. Couraud, E. Jover, J. M. Dubois, and H. Rochat, "Two types of scorpion toxin receptor sites, one related to the activation, the other to the inactivation of the action potential sodium channel," *Toxicon*, vol. 20, no. 1, pp. 9–16, 1982.
  - [17] M. Gurevitz, O. Froy, N. Zilberberg et al., "Sodium channel modifiers from scorpion venom: structure-activity relationship, mode of action and application," *Toxicon*, vol. 36, no. 11, pp. 1671–1682, 1998.
  - [18] I. Krimm, N. Gilles, P. Sautière et al., "Nmr structures and activity of a novel  $\alpha$ -like toxin from the scorpion *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus*," *Journal of Molecular Biology*, vol. 285, no. 4, pp. 1749–1763, 1999.
  - [19] S. Cestèle, M. Stankiewicz, P. Mansuelle et al., "Scorpion alpha-like toxins, toxic to both mammals and insects, differentially interact with receptor site 3 on voltage-gated sodium channels in mammals and insects," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 11, pp. 975–985, 1999.
  - [20] M. Pelhate, M. Stankiewicz, and R. Ben Khalifa, "Anti-insect scorpion toxins: historical account, activities and prospects," *Comptes Rendus Des Séances De La Société De Biologie Et De Ses Filiales*, vol. 192, no. 3, pp. 463–484, 1998.
  - [21] P. Escoubas, M. Stankiewicz, T. Takaoka et al., "Sequence and electrophysiological characterization of two insect-selective excitatory toxins from the venom of the chinese scorpion *Buthus martensi*," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 483, no. 2-3, pp. 175–180, 2000.
  - [22] P. Lazarovici, P. Yanai, M. Pelhate, and E. Zlotkin, "Insect toxic components from the venom of a chactoid scorpion, *Scorpio maurus palmatus* (scorpionidae)," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 257, no. 14, pp. 8397–8404, 1982.
  - [23] L. Borchani, P. Mansuelle, M. Stankiewicz et al., "A new scorpion venom toxin paralytic to insects that affects  $\text{Na}^+$  channel activation. purification, structure, antigenicity and mode of action," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 241, no. 2, pp. 525–532, 1996.
  - [24] L. Borchani, M. Stankiewicz, C. Kopeyan et al., "Purification, structure and activity of three insect toxins from *Buthus occitanus tunetanus* venom," *Toxicon*, vol. 35, no. 3, pp. 365–382, 1997.
  - [25] R. Benkhalifa, M. Stankiewicz, B. Lapied et al., "Refined electrophysiological analysis suggests that a depressant toxin is a sodium channel opener rather than a blocker," *Life Sciences*, vol. 61, no. 8, pp. 819–830, 1997.
  - [26] R. B. Khalifa, M. Stankiewicz, M. Pelhate et al., "Action of babycurus-toxin 1 from the east african scorpion *Babycurus centrurimorphus* on the isolated cockroach giant axon," *Toxicon*, vol. 35, no. 7, pp. 1069–1080, 1997.
  - [27] M. Stankiewicz, F. Grolleau, B. Lapied, L. Borchani, M. El Ayeb, and M. Pelhate, "Bot it2, a toxin paralytic to insects from the *Buthus occitanus tunetanus* venom modifying the activity of insect sodium channels," *Journal of Insect Physiology*, vol. 42, no. 4, pp. 397–405, 1996.
  - [28] T. Piek, A. Duval, B. Hue et al., "Poneratoxin, a novel peptide neurotoxin from the venom of the ant, *Paraponera clavata*," *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology. C*, vol. 99, no. 3, pp. 487–495, 1991.
  - [29] M. E. DeLima, M. F. Martin, C. R. Diniz, and H. Rochat, "*Tityus serrulatus* toxin VII bears pharmacological properties of both beta-toxin and insect toxin from scorpion venoms," *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, vol. 139, pp. 296–302, 1986.
  - [30] B. Becerril, S. Marangoni, and L. D. Possani, "Toxins and genes isolated from scorpions of the genus *Tityus*," *Toxicon*, vol. 35, no. 6, pp. 821–835, 1997.
  - [31] M. Stankiewicz, R. BenKhalifa, M. E. DeLima, and M. Pelhate, "Action of a typical beta scorpion toxin, *Tityus* toxin VII on the cockroach axonal membrane," *Toxicon*, vol. 37, article 310, 1999.
  - [32] M. Eitan, E. Fowler, R. Herrmann, A. Duval, M. Pelhate, and E. Zlotkin, "A scorpion venom neurotoxin paralytic to insects that affects sodium current inactivation: purification, primary structure, and mode of action," *Biochemistry*, vol. 29, no. 25, pp. 5941–5947, 1990.
  - [33] M. Gurevitz, D. Urbach, E. Zlotkin, and N. Zilberberg, "Nucleotide sequence and structure analysis of a cDNA encoding an alpha insect toxin from the scorpion *Leiurus quinquestriatus hebraeus*," *Toxicon*, vol. 29, no. 10, pp. 1270–1272, 1991.
  - [34] M. Gurevitz, E. Zlotkin, and N. Zilberberg, "Characterization of the transcript for a depressant insect selective neurotoxin gene with an isolated cDNA clone from the scorpion *Buthotus judaicus*," *FEBS Letters*, vol. 269, no. 1, pp. 229–232, 1990.
  - [35] N. Zilberberg, E. Zlotkin, and M. Gurevitz, "The cDNA sequence of a depressant insect selective neurotoxin from the scorpion *Buthotus judaicus*," *Toxicon*, vol. 29, no. 9, pp. 1155–1158, 1991.
  - [36] N. Zilberberg, D. Gordon, M. Pelhate et al., "Functional expression and genetic alteration of an alpha scorpion neurotoxin," *Biochemistry*, vol. 35, no. 31, pp. 10215–10222, 1996.
  - [37] M. Turkov, S. Rashi, Z. Noam et al., "In vitro folding and functional analysis of an anti-insect selective scorpion depressant neurotoxin produced in *Escherichia coli*," *Protein Expression and Purification*, vol. 10, no. 1, pp. 123–131, 1997.
  - [38] O. Froy, N. Zilberberg, D. Gordon et al., "The putative bioactive surface of insect-selective scorpion excitatory neurotoxins," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 274, no. 9, pp. 5769–5776, 1999.
  - [39] C. G. Wang, M. H. Ling, C. W. Chi, D. C. Wang, M. Stankiewicz, and M. Pelhate, "Purification of two depressant insect neurotoxins and their gene cloning from the scorpion *Buthus martensi karsch*," *Journal of Peptide Research*, vol. 61, no. 1, pp. 7–16, 2003.
  - [40] D. Strugatsky, N. Zilberberg, M. Stankiewicz et al., "Genetic polymorphism and expression of a highly potent scorpion depressant toxin enable refinement of the effects on insect  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and illuminate the key role of Asn-58," *Biochemistry*, vol. 44, no. 25, pp. 9179–9187, 2005.
  - [41] G. Corzo, P. Escoubas, M. Stankiewicz, M. Pelhate, C. P. Kristensen, and T. Nakajima, "Isolation, synthesis and pharmacological characterization of  $\delta$ -palutoxins IT, novel insecticidal toxins from the spider *Paracoelotes luctuosus* (amaurobiidae)," *European Journal of Biochemistry*, vol. 267, no. 18, pp. 5783–5795, 2000.
  - [42] M. E. De Lima, M. Stankiewicz, A. Hamon et al., "The toxin tx4(6-1) from the spider *Phoneutria nigriventer* slows down  $\text{Na}^+$  current inactivation in insect CNS via binding to receptor site 3," *Journal of Insect Physiology*, vol. 48, no. 1, pp. 53–61, 2002.
  - [43] M. E. De Lima, S. G. Figueiredo, A. M. Pimenta et al., "Peptides of arachnid venoms with insecticidal activity targeting

- sodium channels," *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology. Toxicology & Pharmacology*, vol. 146, pp. 264–279, 2007.
- [44] B. Lapied, C. O. Malecot, and M. Pelhate, "Ionic species involved in the electrical activity of single aminergic neurons isolated from the sixth abdominal ganglion of the cockroach *Periplaneta americana*," *The Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 144, pp. 535–549, 1989.
- [45] B. Lapied, C. O. Malecot, and M. Pelhate, "Patch-clamp study of the properties of the sodium current in cockroach single isolated adult aminergic neurones," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 151, pp. 387–403, 1990.
- [46] F. Grolleau and B. Lapied, "Dorsal unpaired median neurones in the insect central nervous system: towards a better understanding of the ionic mechanisms underlying spontaneous electrical activity," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 203, no. 11, pp. 1633–1648, 2000.
- [47] R. Courjaret and B. Lapied, "Complex intracellular messenger pathways regulate one type of neuronal  $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin-resistant nicotinic acetylcholine receptors expressed in insect neurosecretory cells (dorsal unpaired median neurons)," *Molecular Pharmacology*, vol. 60, no. 1, pp. 80–91, 2001.
- [48] R. Courjaret, F. Grolleau, and B. Lapied, "Two distinct calcium-sensitive and -insensitive pK<sub>u</sub> up- and down-regulate an  $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin-resistant nAChR1 in insect neurosecretory cells (DUM neurons)," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 17, no. 10, pp. 2023–2034, 2003.
- [49] C. Lavielle-Defaix, B. Moignot, C. Legros, and B. Lapied, "How does calcium-dependent intracellular regulation of voltage-dependent sodium current increase the sensitivity to the oxadiazine insecticide indoxacarb metabolite decarbomethoxylated JW062 (DCJW) in insect pacemaker neurons?" *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, vol. 333, no. 1, pp. 264–272, 2010.
- [50] B. Lapied, F. Grolleau, and D. B. Sattelle, "Indoxacarb, an oxadiazine insecticide, blocks insect neuronal sodium channels," *British Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 132, no. 2, pp. 587–595, 2001.
- [51] F. Grolleau, L. Gamelin, M. Boisdron-Celle, B. Lapied, M. Pelhate, and E. Gamelin, "A possible explanation for a neurotoxic effect of the anticancer agent oxaliplatin on neuronal voltage-gated sodium channels," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 85, no. 5, pp. 2293–2297, 2001.
- [52] F. Grolleau, M. Stankiewicz, L. Birinyi-Strachan et al., "Electrophysiological analysis of the neurotoxic action of a funnel-web spider toxin,  $\delta$ -atractoxin-hv1a, on insect voltage-gated Na<sup>+</sup> channels," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 204, no. 4, pp. 711–721, 2001.
- [53] B. Lapied, M. Stankiewicz, F. Grolleau, H. Rochat, E. Zlotkin, and M. Pelhate, "Biophysical properties of scorpion alpha-toxin-sensitive background sodium channel contributing to the pacemaker activity in insect neurosecretory cells (DUM neurons)," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 1, pp. 1449–1460, 1999.
- [54] M. Stankiewicz, F. Grolleau, H. Rochat, E. Zlotkin, M. Pelhate, and B. Lapied, "Insect background sodium channel as a new target for scorpion alpha toxin," *Pesticide Science*, vol. 55, pp. 1021–1026, 1999.
- [55] F. Grolleau, M. Stankiewicz, E. Kielbasiewicz et al., "Indirect activation of neuronal noncapacitative Ca<sup>2+</sup> entry is the final step involved in the neurotoxic effect of *Tityus serrulatus* scorpion  $\beta$ -toxin," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 23, no. 6, pp. 1465–1478, 2006.
- [56] Y. Pichon and J. J. Callec, "Further studies on synaptic transmission in insects. i. external recording of synaptic potentials in a single giant axon of the cockroach, *Periplaneta americana* L," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 52, no. 2, pp. 257–265, 1970.
- [57] J. J. Callec, J. C. Guillet, Y. Pichon, and J. Boistel, "Further studies on synaptic transmission in insects. ii. relations between sensory information and its synaptic integration at the level of a single giant axon in the cockroach," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 55, no. 1, pp. 123–149, 1971.
- [58] B. Hue, M. Pelhate, J. J. Callec, and J. Chanelet, "Postsynaptic effects of 4-aminopyridine in the sixth abdominal ganglion of the cockroach," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 49, no. 3, pp. 327–329, 1978.
- [59] B. Hue, *Electrophysiologie et pharmacologie de la transmission synaptique dans le système nerveux central de la blatte Periplaneta americana L.*, Ph.D. thesis, Université d'Angers, France, 1983.
- [60] B. Hue and J. J. Callec, "Electrophysiology and pharmacology of synaptic transmission in the central nervous system of the cockroach," in *Cockroaches as Models for Neurobiology: Applications in Biomedical Research*, I. Huber, E. P. Masler, and B. R. Rao, Eds., pp. 149–168, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, USA, 1990.
- [61] B. Hue, "Functional assay for gaba receptor subtypes of a cockroach giant interneuron," *Archives of Insect Biochemistry and Physiology*, vol. 18, no. 3, pp. 147–157, 1991.
- [62] H. Le Corrond, B. Lapied, and B. Hue, "M2-like presynaptic receptors modulate acetylcholine release in the cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*) central nervous system," *Journal of Insect Physiology*, vol. 37, no. 9, pp. 647–652, 1991.
- [63] T. Piek, B. Hue, H. Le Corrond, P. Mantel, M. Gobbo, and R. Rocchi, "Presynaptic block of transmission in the insect CNS by mono- and di-galactosyl analogues of vesiculakinin 1, a wasp (*Paravespula maculifrons*) venom neurotoxin," *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology. C*, vol. 105, no. 2, pp. 189–196, 1993.
- [64] I. D. Harrow, B. Hue, M. Pelhate, and D. B. Sattelle, " $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin blocks excitatory post-synaptic potentials in an identified insect interneurone," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 295, pp. 63–64, 1979.
- [65] V. A. Chiappinelli, B. Hue, L. Mony, and D. B. Sattelle, " $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin blocks nicotinic transmission at an identified invertebrate central synapse," *Journal of Experimental Biology*, vol. 141, pp. 61–71, 1989.
- [66] M. Stankiewicz, A. Hamon, R. Benkhalifa et al., "Effects of a centipede venom fraction on insect nervous system, a native xenopus oocyte receptor and on an expressed drosophila muscarinic receptor," *Toxicon*, vol. 37, no. 10, pp. 1431–1445, 1999.
- [67] V. Corbel, M. Stankiewicz, J. Bonnet, F. Grolleau, J. M. Hougard, and B. Lapied, "Synergism between insecticides permethrin and propoxur occurs through activation of presynaptic muscarinic negative feedback of acetylcholine release in the insect central nervous system," *Neurotoxicology*, vol. 27, no. 4, pp. 508–519, 2006.
- [68] M. E. de Lima, F. Couraud, B. Lapied, M. Pelhate, C. R. Diniz, and H. Rochat, "Photoaffinity labeling of scorpion toxin receptors associated with insect synaptosomal Na<sup>+</sup> channels," *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, vol. 151, no. 1, pp. 187–192, 1988.

## Review Article

# Ion Channels and Zinc: Mechanisms of Neurotoxicity and Neurodegeneration

Deborah R. Morris<sup>1</sup> and Cathy W. Levenson<sup>1,2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Department of Biomedical Sciences, Florida State University College of Medicine, Tallahassee, FL 32306 4300, USA

<sup>2</sup> Program in Neuroscience, Florida State University College of Medicine, Tallahassee, FL 32306 4300, USA

Correspondence should be addressed to Cathy W. Levenson, cathy.levenson@med.fsu.edu

Received 9 January 2012; Accepted 17 February 2012

Academic Editor: Yonghua Ji

Copyright © 2012 D. R. Morris and C. W. Levenson. This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

Ionotropic glutamate receptors, such as NMDA, AMPA and kainate receptors, are ligand-gated ion channels that mediate much of the excitatory neurotransmission in the brain. Not only do these receptors bind glutamate, but they are also regulated by and facilitate the postsynaptic uptake of the trace metal zinc. This paper discusses the role of the excitotoxic influx and accumulation of zinc, the mechanisms responsible for its cytotoxicity, and a number of disorders of the central nervous system that have been linked to these neuronal ion channels and zinc toxicity including ischemic brain injury, traumatic brain injury, and epilepsy.

## 1. Introduction

Although zinc is clearly an essential trace element that is required for the function of hundreds of enzymes and DNA-binding transcription factors, excessive zinc has long been implicated in processes leading to cellular damage. In the central nervous system large amounts of zinc can enter postsynaptic neurons through a variety of ion channels including glutamate receptors and voltage-gated calcium channels. This paper will first discuss the cellular pools of zinc, the mechanisms that appear to be responsible for the accumulation of neuronal zinc, and then outline the current hypotheses about how excess zinc exploits ion channels and other mechanisms to produce neurotoxicity in the hippocampus, amygdala, and cortex under pathological conditions. With these mechanisms in mind we will then discuss relevant clinical situations such as traumatic brain injury, ischemic injury (stroke), and epilepsy, where excess zinc accumulation can lead to neurodegeneration.

## 2. Neurotoxic Zinc: Cellular Sources and Routes of Entry

**2.1. Sources of Neurotoxic Zinc.** While a majority of zinc in the central nervous system (CNS) is tightly bound to

zinc-dependent enzymes and other proteins, approximately 10% is “free” or “chelatable” zinc which is not associated with proteins or amino acid ligands. Under pathological conditions, free zinc appears to participate in the neurotoxic accumulation of zinc in neurons. In normal neurons, free zinc is predominately localized to the presynaptic vesicles of glutamatergic neurons [1, 2]. Free zinc has also been colocalized to GABA and glycine containing murine neurons [3]. Regions rich in vesicular free zinc include the mossy fibers of the hippocampus, the amygdala, and the olfactory bulb. “Zincergic” neurons are also abundant in the cortex [4].

In addition to the large pool of vesicular zinc, there is clear evidence for additional intracellular pools of zinc that can be liberated to form free zinc. The strongest case for the presence of nonvesicular pools of free zinc comes from a report showing that free zinc accumulates after seizure activity in animals that lack vesicular zinc [5]. This work measured free zinc accumulation in the hippocampal neurons of ZnT3-null mice that lack the ability to pump zinc into synaptic vesicles. While this work did not definitively determine the source of the non-vesicular free zinc, the surprising finding that these animals exhibited accumulation of free zinc in damaged neurons after kainate-induced seizures began the hunt for alternative pools of free zinc that may participate in neurotoxicity. Subsequently, others



have identified a mitochondrial pool of zinc that can be both influenced by the amount of intracellular zinc as well as contribute to it [6]. There is also now evidence that protein bound zinc can be mobilized to form a free zinc pool under oxidative conditions [7].

**2.2. Routes of Neurotoxic Zinc Entry.** Upon neuronal excitation, vesicular zinc is released into the synaptic cleft. Under normal conditions, the primary function of the zinc from synaptic vesicles appears to be the modulation of both ionotropic and metabotropic post-synaptic receptors through zinc-specific allosteric binding sites. For example, zinc inhibits GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors, reducing their inhibitory action [8, 9]. The effect of zinc on excitatory glutamate receptors is complex. Not only can zinc act as an inhibitory neuromodulator of glutamate release [10], but it was initially thought to inhibit activity of NMDA glutamate receptors [9, 11]. However, there are reports of biphasic and cell type-specific zinc regulation of both NMDA and AMPA/kainate glutamate receptors [12–15]. Additionally, zinc can potentiate glycine-mediated currents [16] and regulate voltage-gated calcium channels [17] as well as potassium, sodium, and chloride channels [18].

However, under pathological conditions, excess free zinc is released from synaptic and other free zinc pools. As excess zinc floods the synaptic cleft, it exploits a variety of receptors and channels to gain entry into post-synaptic neurons. There appear to be at least four different routes of entry. First, AMPA/kainate glutamate receptors have been identified as the primary route of entry for zinc into post-synaptic neurons [19]. Zinc also exploits NMDA glutamate receptors to gain entry into neurons. Both of these glutamate binding receptors transport calcium as well as zinc into post-synaptic neurons. The third route of entry for toxic levels of zinc is voltage-gated calcium channels [19–21]. Finally, excess zinc appears to enter neurons via a transporter-mediated exchange with intracellular sodium. While the presence of a putative Na<sup>+</sup>/Zn<sup>2+</sup> exchanger has been hypothesized, it is also probable that when excess zinc is released from presynaptic neurons, it can replace calcium and gain entry into neurons via Na<sup>+</sup>/Ca<sup>2+</sup> exchange proteins [20].

### 3. Mechanisms of Zinc Neurotoxicity

Damage to the CNS induced by seizure, trauma, or ischemia can all result in the accumulation of zinc from vesicular and non-vesicular zinc pools. While it is clear that the excess zinc that is detected in these and other pathological conditions is neurotoxic, there is considerable debate about the cause of the toxicity. There are three main hypotheses that are currently being explored, namely, that excess zinc: causes excitotoxicity, induces oxidative stress, and impairs the generation of cellular energy. In fact, as the next several sections will show, there is evidence for each of these mechanisms, suggesting that they are not mutually exclusive, and that all three actions of zinc may be acting synergistically to cause neuronal damage and death.

**3.1. Excitotoxicity.** The influx of excess zinc into neurons has been shown to result in excitotoxic damage to post-synaptic neurons. This is in part mediated by the action of zinc on glutamate receptors and other ion channels. For example, when large amounts of glutamate and zinc are released together from pre-synaptic neurons, there is an acute block of NMDA glutamate receptors as zinc binds to allosteric sites on these ion channels. However, this acute downregulation is followed by a Src family kinase-mediated upregulation of NMDA receptor activity that appears to participate in neuronal damage and cytotoxicity [12].

**3.2. Oxidative Stress.** Excess zinc has been implicated in the generation of oxidative stress by free radicals and reactive oxygen species (ROS) leading to neuronal damage and death. In fact, it was recently hypothesized that the combination of age-related oxidation and resulting zinc accumulation could act synergistically to promote aging-related neuronal damage and neurodegeneration [22]. In support of this hypothesis, treatment of mouse cortical neuron cultures with 30–35  $\mu$ M zinc for 24 hours triggered processes eventually leading to neuronal, but not glial, death [23] that was accompanied by membrane lipid peroxidation. Interestingly, while the neurotrophins NT-3, NT-4/5 and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) were unable to prevent the zinc-induced neurotoxicity, the water soluble form of vitamin E, trolox, almost completely prevented the neuronal death associated with excess zinc in these cultures [23, 24]. Zinc toxicity, both as a result of zinc applied directly to neuronal cultures and after kainate application, was also prevented by the addition of glutathione [25]. Together, these data suggest that much of the neuronal damage was the result of free radical generation.

It should be noted that the neuronal death was accompanied by classical features of apoptosis including internucleosomal DNA fragmentation, as well as other characteristics commonly associated with necrosis such as swelling of intracellular organelles [23, 24]. While the authors of this early report suggest that zinc may trigger necrosis, subsequent work has shown that neuronal apoptosis is complex and frequently cannot be categorized into strictly apoptosis or necrosis, but is probably best described as a continuum, with characteristics that include those classically associated with both apoptosis and necrosis [26].

Clearly the next question is *how* excess zinc leads to the production of ROS. Early evidence suggested a role for zinc in the regulation of neuronal protein kinase C (PKC) [27]. While this initial report linked the zinc-regulation of PKC to oxidative damage, it was subsequent work that led to the elucidation of the mechanism responsible for the PKC-dependent generation of ROS in zinc-loaded neurons. Namely, it appears that zinc-stimulated PKC enhances the expression of the enzyme NADPH oxidase. Zinc also facilitates the translocation of the NADPH oxidase subunits p47<sup>PHOX</sup> and p67<sup>PHOX</sup> to the neuronal membrane, where they participate in the generation of ROS [28]. Zinc-stimulated NADPH oxidase may also stimulate the activation of poly (SDP-ribose) polymerase (PARP), which can trigger

apoptotic processes [29]. While it is clear that these may not be the only mechanisms responsible for the generation of ROS in zinc-loaded cells, the work does shed light on the role of oxidation in zinc toxicity.

**3.3. Impaired Energy Production.** While early work showed that nanomolar concentrations of zinc were capable of significantly inhibiting the glycolytic enzyme glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH), our current understanding of the role of zinc in neuronal glycolysis is that excess zinc rapidly reduces cellular levels of nicotinamideadenine dinucleotide ( $\text{NAD}^+$ ) [30–32]. This reduction in  $\text{NAD}^+$  is not only responsible for the reduced activity of GAPDH and the subsequent accumulation of dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and fructose 1,6 biphosphate, but also leads to a reduction in ATP levels and subsequent neuronal death [30]. Reductions in  $\text{NAD}^+$  would be expected to reduce cellular ATP production not only because it inhibits the activity of glycolytic enzymes, but also because of the resulting inhibition of mitochondrial respiratory enzymes. In fact, several studies have reported reductions in the  $\text{NAD}^+$  dependent enzymes alpha-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase and isocitrate dehydrogenase as well as other mitochondrial enzymes including succinate dehydrogenase and aconitase [33, 34].

Other mechanisms leading to zinc-induced mitochondrial dysfunction including the RAS/ERK/MAPK signaling pathway [35], where ERK 1/2 is likely activated via zinc induction of the immediate early gene *erg-1* [36], and MAPK signaling leads to mitochondrial hyperpolarization [35]. Furthermore, mitochondrial trafficking, which has been hypothesized to play a role in neurodegeneration, is impaired by excess zinc, potentially by a phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-mediated mechanism [37]. Not only can zinc act as an independent modulator of mitochondrial function, it also appears to act synergistically with other agents such as kainate to induce mitochondrial dysfunction and neuronal death [38, 39]. This appears to be facilitated by the mitochondrial uptake of zinc, followed by the release of proapoptotic mitochondrial proteins such as cytochrome c and the apoptosis induction factor, AIF [40].

## 4. Zinc Toxicity in Neurological Disease and Disorders

The proposed mechanisms associated with zinc neurotoxicity have been implicated in a large number of neurodegenerative disorders including amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Alzheimer's disease, and Parkinson's disease. The strongest links, however, between the excess zinc release and uptake via ion channels have been observed in models of ischemic brain injury, traumatic brain injury, and seizure disorders.

**4.1. Zinc and Ischemic Brain Injury.** Although its role is under active investigation, zinc dysregulation has been implicated in mechanisms leading to neuronal damage and death after ischemic brain injury. Tønder et al. first suggested a role of zinc toxicity in the neuronal death associated with global

ischemia. In this early report, when adult rats were subjected to global brain ischemia there was a decrease in free zinc associated with mossy fiber layers of the hippocampus and an increase in the dentate hilar region of degenerating neurons [41]. In another model of stroke, transient forebrain ischemia, zinc left pre-synaptic terminals and accumulated in post-synaptic neurons. This translocation was associated with degeneration of neurons in the hippocampus, cerebral cortex, thalamus, striatum, and amygdala. An intracerebral injection with the membrane impermeant zinc chelator Ca-EDTA prior to ischemia was neuroprotective and significantly decreased neuronal death [42]. Administration of Ca-EDTA 30 min prior to mild focal ischemia reduced infarct size 3 days after injury. However, the infarct reduction was lost when rats were euthanized 14 days later, even when Ca-EDTA was continuously perfused [43].

Aspirin is an anti-inflammatory drug commonly used for secondary prevention after stroke and is protective against NMDA-induced and zinc-induced neurotoxicity. The application of 3–10 mM aspirin to cortical neurons exposed to 300  $\mu\text{M}$  zinc for 30 min prevented neuronal degeneration but not oxidative stress or apoptosis. It was shown that aspirin prevented zinc entry into neurons by inhibiting voltage-gated calcium channels, which is a main route for zinc entry into neurons [44].

**4.2. Zinc and Traumatic Brain Injury.** There is also a relationship between accumulation of free zinc and neuronal degeneration following traumatic brain injury. In one study, adult rats and neonatal pups were given a unilateral cortical stab wound. Four weeks following injury, adult rats, but not neonatal pups, showed increased TSQ staining of free zinc in and around the site of injury, suggesting that the accumulation of free zinc is responsible for neuronal death [45]. A TBI model of mechanical cortical trauma in rats resulted in loss of zinc from pre-synaptic vesicles and movement into post-synaptic neurons accompanied by neuronal death in the hilus, dentate gyrus, and CA1 regions of the hippocampus [46]. It was further demonstrated that rats given a mild or moderate TBI by a fluid percussion injury showed that injured neurons stained with Fluoro-Jade in the hippocampal regions of CA1, CA3, and dentate gyrus 4 hours and 24 hours after injury contained high levels of free zinc as detected by the zinc indicator Newport Green. This is an important finding because it suggests that an increase in free zinc after brain injury is neurotoxic and causes neuronal death in the hippocampus [47].

Additional evidence that high levels of free zinc are involved in neuronal degeneration after brain injury comes from experiments demonstrating that injections of the extracellular zinc chelator Ca-EDTA before TBI provided a neuroprotective effect by reducing cell death in the hippocampus [46]. Pretreatment with Ca-EDTA before a TBI-induced model of fluid percussion injury reduced apoptotic cell death measured by TUNEL labeling while also upregulating the expression of neuroprotective genes [48]. However, rats that were given a TBI and Ca-EDTA treatment did not have improved learning and memory performance in the Morris

Water Maze test two weeks after TBI. Although zinc chelation provides short-term histological benefits, it does not appear to improve long-term functional outcomes [49].

Interestingly, recent evidence has suggested that the source of the zinc that accumulates after TBI in mice is not exclusively vesicular and has led researcher to question some of the previous assumptions about the role of zinc in brain injury. ZnT3-knockout mice that lack vesicular zinc showed an increase in injured neurons and apoptotic cells compared to wild-type (WT) control mice 24 hours after injury. After chemical blocking of vesicular zinc in post-TBI ZnT3 KO and WT mice, damage was unchanged in ZnT3 KO mice, while the numbers of apoptotic cells increased in WT mice with levels comparable to ZnT3 KO mice. This new evidence suggests that free vesicular zinc may actually play a neuroprotective role after TBI [50]. Clearly more work will be needed to understand the role of zinc, glutamate receptors, calcium channels, and other mechanisms after traumatic brain injury. In light of these new data it is interesting to note that administration of zinc appears to have a positive effect on outcomes after TBI. In one clinical trial, zinc supplementation improved neurological scores following TBI [51]. More recent work in a rat model of TBI showed that zinc can provide behavioral resiliency to TBI when given 4 weeks prior to injury and resulting in improved cognition and reduced depression- and anxiety-like behaviors [52]. The mechanisms responsible for the robust effect of zinc in this model are currently under investigation ZnT3.

**4.3. Zinc and Epilepsy.** Zinc dysregulation and homeostasis has been suggested to play a role in the development of seizures. In an epilepsy mouse model, zinc levels were significantly lower in the hippocampus when compared to control mouse strains [53]. There is also evidence that zinc translocates from pre-synaptic boutons into post-synaptic neurons, possibly causing neuronal degeneration after seizure [54].

As discussed previously, synaptic zinc acts as a neuromodulator and regulates the activity of a variety of post-synaptic receptors including NMDA, GABA<sub>A</sub>, and AMPA receptors, which then determine neuronal excitability [55]. As a result of its ability to act as a neuromodulator, zinc has been implicated as a proconvulsant [56] and anticonvulsant [57]. Studies that support the proconvulsant theory showed that seizures were induced by an injection of zinc sulfate in rabbits [56]. It has also been shown that zinc chloride enhances kainate neurotoxicity in the hippocampus. Interestingly, CNQX, an NMDA antagonist, helped to prevent neuronal damage [58]. During kindling-induced seizures in which a stimulus was applied for ten times a day for two days, and the zinc chelator diethyldithiocarbamate (DEDTC) was injected before each stimulus, duration of behavioral seizures and electrical discharges were decreased [59].

Despite this work, most data support the idea of zinc as an anticonvulsant. Increased susceptibility to kainate-induced seizures was observed in both ZnT3 KO mice lacking vesicular zinc [55] and in mice fed a zinc deficient diet for

4 weeks [60]. After kainate treatment, hippocampal extracellular fluid in zinc deficient mice had increased levels of glutamate and decreased levels of GABA compared to control animals [60]. Furthermore, in a mouse model of epilepsy, seizure susceptibility was increased by zinc deficiency and reduced by zinc supplementation [61]. Chelation studies further support the anticonvulsant theory in that membrane permeable and membrane impermeable zinc chelators have little effect on seizure activity in the CA3 region of the hippocampus [62].

Since most studies suggest that zinc plays an anticonvulsant role in seizures, it is important to look at the possible role of zinc supplementation as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of seizure. The administration of zinc directly into the dentate gyrus of the hippocampus delayed behavioral seizures during electrical stimulation in adult Wistar rats [63]. Intraperitoneal injections with a medium dose of zinc (3 mg/kg) and with the antiepileptic drug valproic acid either alone or in combination reduced the severity of pilocarpine-induced seizures. In contrast, high doses (60 mg/kg) of zinc exacerbated the severity of seizures highlighting the dose-dependent effect of zinc [64].

## 5. Conclusion

Neuronal ion channels and receptors and zinc toxicity appear to play a role in a number of neurological disorders and diseases. Gaining access to neurons through these receptors and channels, excess zinc leads to excitotoxicity, oxidative stress, and impairment of neuronal energy production, all of which not only damage neurons but also lead to neuronal death. Future work will be needed to develop strategies to block zinc-mediated damage and prevent poor outcomes associated with stroke, traumatic brain injury, and epilepsy as well as other neurodegenerative disorders that may respond to therapies designed to modulate ion channels and zinc.

## References

- [1] G. Danscher, "The autometallographic zinc-sulphide method. A new approach involving in vivo creation of nanometer-sized zinc sulphide crystal lattices in zinc-enriched synaptic and secretory vesicles," *Histochemical Journal*, vol. 28, no. 5, pp. 361–373, 1996.
- [2] N. Franco-Pons, C. Casanovas-Aguilar, S. Arroyo, J. Rumià, J. Pérez-Clausell, and G. Danscher, "Zinc-rich synaptic boutons in human temporal cortex biopsies," *Neuroscience*, vol. 98, no. 3, pp. 429–435, 2000.
- [3] K. J. Kovács and A. A. Larson, "Zn<sup>2+</sup> inhibition of [3H]MK-801 binding is different in mouse brain and spinal cord: effect of glycine and glutamate," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, vol. 324, no. 1, pp. 117–123, 1997.
- [4] C. J. Frederickson, S. W. Suh, D. Silva, C. J. Frederickson, and R. B. Thompson, "Importance of zinc in the central nervous system: the zinc-containing neuron," *Journal of Nutrition*, vol. 130, no. 5, pp. 1471S–1483S, 2000.
- [5] J. Y. Lee, T. B. Cole, R. D. Palmiter, and J. Y. Koh, "Accumulation of zinc in degenerating hippocampal neurons of ZnT3-null mice after seizures: evidence against synaptic vesicle



- origin," *The Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 20, no. 11, article RC79, 2000.
- [6] S. L. Sensi, D. Ton-That, P. G. Sullivan et al., "Modulation of mitochondrial function by endogenous Zn<sup>2+</sup> pools," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 100, no. 10, pp. 6157–6162, 2003.
- [7] M. A. Aras and E. Aizenman, "Redox regulation of intracellular zinc: molecular signaling in the life and death of neurons," *Antioxidants and Redox Signaling*, vol. 15, no. 8, pp. 2249–2263, 2011.
- [8] T. G. Smart, X. Xie, and B. J. Krishek, "Modulation of inhibitory and excitatory amino acid receptor ion channels by zinc," *Progress in Neurobiology*, vol. 42, no. 3, pp. 393–441, 1994.
- [9] G. L. Westbrook and M. L. Mayer, "Micromolar concentrations of Zn<sup>2+</sup> antagonize NMDA and GABA responses of hippocampal neurons," *Nature*, vol. 328, no. 6131, pp. 640–643, 1987.
- [10] A. Takeda, A. Minami, Y. Seki, and N. Oku, "Differential effects of zinc on glutamatergic and GABAergic neurotransmitter systems in the hippocampus," *Journal of Neuroscience Research*, vol. 75, no. 2, pp. 225–229, 2004.
- [11] K. Vogt, J. Mellor, G. Tong, and R. Nicoll, "The actions of synaptically released zinc at hippocampal mossy fiber synapses," *Neuron*, vol. 26, no. 1, pp. 187–196, 2000.
- [12] P. Manzerra, M. M. Behrens, L. M. T. Canzoniero et al., "Zinc induces a Src family kinase-mediated up-regulation of NMDA receptor activity and excitotoxicity," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 98, no. 20, pp. 11055–11061, 2001.
- [13] D. D. Lin, A. S. Cohen, and D. A. Coulter, "Zinc-induced augmentation of excitatory synaptic currents and glutamate receptor responses in hippocampal CA3 neurons," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 85, no. 3, pp. 1185–1196, 2001.
- [14] D. Q. Zhang, C. Ribelayga, S. C. Mangel, and D. G. McMahon, "Suppression by zinc of AMPA receptor-mediated synaptic transmission in the retina," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 88, no. 3, pp. 1245–1251, 2002.
- [15] L. J. Blakemore and P. Q. Trombley, "Diverse modulation of olfactory bulb AMPA receptors by zinc," *NeuroReport*, vol. 15, no. 5, pp. 919–923, 2004.
- [16] P. Q. Trombley and G. M. Shepherd, "Differential modulation by zinc and copper of amino acid receptors from rat olfactory bulb neurons," *Journal of Neurophysiology*, vol. 76, no. 4, pp. 2536–2546, 1996.
- [17] B. D. Winegar and J. B. Lansman, "Voltage-dependent block by zinc of single calcium channels in mouse myotubes," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 425, pp. 563–578, 1990.
- [18] N. L. Harrison and S. J. Gibbons, "Zn<sup>2+</sup>: an endogenous modulator of ligand- and voltage-gated ion channels," *Neuropharmacology*, vol. 33, no. 8, pp. 935–952, 1994.
- [19] J. R. Martinez-Galan, C. Diaz, and J. M. Juiz, "Histochemical localization of neurons with zinc-permeable AMPA/kainate channels in rat brain slices," *Brain Research*, vol. 963, no. 1–2, pp. 156–164, 2003.
- [20] S. L. Sensi, L. M. T. Canzoniero, S. P. Yu et al., "Measurement of intracellular free zinc in living cortical neurons: routes of entry," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 17, no. 24, pp. 9554–9564, 1997.
- [21] J. H. Weiss and S. L. Sensi, "Ca<sup>2+</sup>-Zn<sup>2+</sup> permeable AMPA or kainate receptors: possible key factors in selective neurodegeneration," *Trends in Neurosciences*, vol. 23, no. 8, pp. 365–371, 2000.
- [22] V. Frazzini, E. Rockabrand, E. Mocchegiani, and S. L. Sensi, "Oxidative stress and brain aging: is zinc the link?" *Biogerontology*, vol. 7, no. 5–6, pp. 307–314, 2006.
- [23] E. Y. Kim, J. Y. Koh, Y. H. Kim, S. Sohn, E. Joe, and B. J. Gwag, "Zn<sup>2+</sup> entry produces oxidative neuronal necrosis in cortical cell cultures," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 11, no. 1, pp. 327–334, 1999.
- [24] Y. H. Kim, E. Y. Kim, B. J. Gwag, S. Sohn, and J. Y. Koh, "Zinc-induced cortical neuronal death with features of apoptosis and necrosis: mediation by free radicals," *Neuroscience*, vol. 89, no. 1, pp. 175–182, 1999.
- [25] I. H. Cho Ik Hyun, J. Y. Im, D. Kim, K. S. Kim, J. K. Lee, and P. L. Han, "Protective effects of extracellular glutathione against Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced cell death in vitro and in vivo," *Journal of Neuroscience Research*, vol. 74, no. 5, pp. 736–743, 2003.
- [26] L. J. Martin, "Neuronal cell death in nervous system development, disease, and injury," *International Journal of Molecular Medicine*, vol. 7, no. 5, pp. 455–478, 2001.
- [27] K. M. Noh, Y. H. Kim, and J. Y. Koh, "Mediation by membrane protein kinase C of zinc-induced oxidative neuronal injury in mouse cortical cultures," *Journal of Neurochemistry*, vol. 72, no. 4, pp. 1609–1616, 1999.
- [28] K. M. Noh and J. Y. Koh, "Induction and activation by zinc of NADPH oxidase in cultured cortical neurons and astrocytes," *The Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 20, no. 23, article RC111, 2000.
- [29] Y. H. Kim and J. Y. Koh, "The role of NADPH oxidase and neuronal nitric oxide synthase in zinc-induced poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase activation and cell death in cortical culture," *Experimental Neurology*, vol. 177, no. 2, pp. 407–418, 2002.
- [30] C. T. Sheline, M. M. Behrens, and D. W. Choi, "Zinc-induced cortical neuronal death: contribution of energy failure attributable to loss of NAD<sup>+</sup> and inhibition of glycolysis," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 20, no. 9, pp. 3139–3146, 2000.
- [31] A. L. Cai, G. J. Zipfel, and C. T. Sheline, "Zinc neurotoxicity is dependent on intracellular NAD<sup>+</sup> levels and the sirtuin pathway," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 24, no. 8, pp. 2169–2176, 2006.
- [32] C. T. Sheline, A. L. Cai, J. Zhu, and C. Shi, "Serum or target deprivation-induced neuronal death causes oxidative neuronal accumulation of Zn<sup>2+</sup> and loss of NAD<sup>+</sup>," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 32, no. 6, pp. 894–904, 2010.
- [33] A. M. Brown, B. S. Kristal, M. S. Effron et al., "Zn<sup>2+</sup> inhibits  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate-stimulated mitochondrial respiration and the isolated  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 275, no. 18, pp. 13441–13447, 2000.
- [34] J. Lemire, R. Mailloux, and V. D. Appanna, "Zinc toxicity alters mitochondrial metabolism and leads to decreased ATP production in hepatocytes," *Journal of Applied Toxicology*, vol. 28, no. 2, pp. 175–182, 2008.
- [35] K. He and E. Aizenman, "ERK signaling leads to mitochondrial dysfunction in extracellular zinc-induced neurotoxicity," *Journal of Neurochemistry*, vol. 114, no. 2, pp. 452–461, 2010.
- [36] J. A. Park and K. Jae-Young, "Induction of an immediate early gene *egr-1* by zinc through extracellular signal-regulated kinase activation in cortical culture: its role in zinc-induced neuronal death," *Journal of Neurochemistry*, vol. 73, no. 2, pp. 450–456, 1999.
- [37] L. M. Malaiyandi, A. S. Honick, G. L. Rintoul, Q. J. Wang, and I. J. Reynolds, "Zn<sup>2+</sup> inhibits mitochondrial movement in neurons by phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase activation," *Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 25, no. 41, pp. 9507–9514, 2005.



- [38] S. L. Sensi, H. Z. Yin, and J. H. Weiss, "AMPA/kainate receptor-triggered Zn<sup>2+</sup> entry into cortical neurons induces mitochondrial Zn<sup>2+</sup> uptake and persistent mitochondrial dysfunction," *European Journal of Neuroscience*, vol. 12, no. 10, pp. 3813–3818, 2000.
- [39] E. R. Lozier, E. V. Stelmashook, R. E. Uzbekov et al., "Stimulation of kainate toxicity by zinc in cultured cerebellar granule neurons and the role of mitochondria in this process," *Toxicology Letters*, vol. 208, no. 1, pp. 36–40, 2012.
- [40] D. Jiang, P. G. Sullivan, S. L. Sensi, O. Steward, and J. H. Weiss, "Zn<sup>2+</sup> induces permeability transition pore opening and release of pro-apoptotic peptides from neuronal mitochondria," *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 276, no. 50, pp. 47524–47529, 2001.
- [41] B. Tønder, F. F. Johansen, C. J. Frederickson, J. Zimmer, and N. H. Diemer, "Possible role of zinc in the selective degeneration of dentate hilar neurons after cerebral ischemia in the adult rat," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 109, no. 3, pp. 247–252, 1990.
- [42] J. Y. Koh, S. W. Suh, B. J. Gwag, Y. Y. He, C. Y. Hsu, and D. W. Choi, "The role of zinc in selective neuronal death after transient global cerebral ischemia," *Science*, vol. 272, no. 5264, pp. 1013–1016, 1996.
- [43] J. M. Lee, G. J. Zipfel, K. H. Park, Y. Y. He, C. Y. Hsu, and D. W. Choi, "Zinc translocation accelerates infarction after mild transient focal ischemia," *Neuroscience*, vol. 115, no. 3, pp. 871–878, 2002.
- [44] E. Young Kim, S. Y. Chang, J. M. Chung et al., "Attenuation of Zn<sup>2+</sup> neurotoxicity by aspirin: role of N-type Ca<sup>2+</sup> channel and the carboxyl acid group," *Neurobiology of Disease*, vol. 8, no. 5, pp. 774–783, 2001.
- [45] E. C. Yeiser, A. A. Lerant, R. M. Casto, and C. W. Levenson, "Free zinc increases at the site of injury after cortical stab wounds in mature but not immature rat brain," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 277, no. 2, pp. 75–78, 1999.
- [46] S. W. Suh, J. W. Chen, M. Motamedi et al., "Evidence that synaptically-released zinc contributes to neuronal injury after traumatic brain injury," *Brain Research*, vol. 852, no. 2, pp. 268–273, 2000.
- [47] H. L. Hellmich, K. A. Eidson, B. A. Capra et al., "Injured Fluoro-Jade-positive hippocampal neurons contain high levels of zinc after traumatic brain injury," *Brain Research*, vol. 1127, no. 1, pp. 119–126, 2007.
- [48] H. L. Hellmich, C. J. Frederickson, D. S. DeWitt et al., "Protective effects of zinc chelation in traumatic brain injury correlate with upregulation of neuroprotective genes in rat brain," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 355, no. 3, pp. 221–225, 2004.
- [49] H. L. Hellmich, K. Eidson, J. Cowart et al., "Chelation of neurotoxic zinc levels does not improve neurobehavioral outcome after traumatic brain injury," *Neuroscience Letters*, vol. 440, no. 2, pp. 155–159, 2008.
- [50] P. Doering, G. Danscher, A. Larsen, M. Bruhn, C. Søndergaard, and M. Stoltenberg, "Changes in the vesicular zinc pattern following traumatic brain injury," *Neuroscience*, vol. 150, no. 1, pp. 93–103, 2007.
- [51] B. Young, L. Ott, E. Kasarskis et al., "Zinc supplementation is associated with improved neurologic recovery rate and visceral protein levels of patients with severe closed head injury," *Journal of Neurotrauma*, vol. 13, no. 1, pp. 25–34, 1996.
- [52] E. C. Cope, D. R. Morris, A. G. Scrimgeour, J. W. VanLandingham, and C. W. Levenson, "Zinc supplementation provides behavioral resiliency in a rat model of traumatic brain injury," *Physiology and Behavior*, vol. 104, no. 5, pp. 942–947, 2011.
- [53] M. Fukahori, M. Itoh, K. Oomagari, and H. Kawasaki, "Zinc content in discrete hippocampal and amygdaloid areas of the epilepsy (El) mouse and normal mice," *Brain Research*, vol. 455, no. 2, pp. 381–384, 1988.
- [54] C. J. Frederickson, M. D. Hernandez, and J. F. McGinty, "Translocation of zinc may contribute to seizure-induced death of neurons," *Brain Research*, vol. 480, no. 1-2, pp. 317–321, 1989.
- [55] T. B. Cole, C. A. Robbins, H. J. Wenzel, P. A. Schwartzkroin, and R. D. Palmiter, "Seizures and neuronal damage in mice lacking vesicular zinc," *Epilepsy Research*, vol. 39, no. 2, pp. 153–169, 2000.
- [56] Y. Pei, D. Zhao, J. Huang, and L. Cao, "Zinc-induced seizures: a new experimental model of epilepsy," *Epilepsia*, vol. 24, no. 2, pp. 169–176, 1983.
- [57] A. Williamson and D. Spencer, "Zinc reduces dentate granule cell hyperexcitability in epileptic humans," *NeuroReport*, vol. 6, no. 11, pp. 1562–1564, 1995.
- [58] K. Shiraishi, S. Nakazawa, and H. Ito, "Zinc enhances kainate neurotoxicity in the rat brain," *Neurological Research*, vol. 15, no. 2, pp. 113–116, 1993.
- [59] M. L. Foresti, G. M. Arisi, A. Fernandes, C. Q. Tilelli, and N. Garcia-Cairasco, "Chelatable zinc modulates excitability and seizure duration in the amygdala rapid kindling model," *Epilepsy Research*, vol. 79, no. 2-3, pp. 166–172, 2008.
- [60] A. Takeda, M. Hirate, H. Tamano, D. Nisibaba, and N. Oku, "Susceptibility to kainate-induced seizures under dietary zinc deficiency," *Journal of Neurochemistry*, vol. 85, no. 6, pp. 1575–1580, 2003.
- [61] M. Fukahori and M. Itoh, "Effects of dietary zinc status on seizure susceptibility and hippocampal zinc content in the El (epilepsy) mouse," *Brain Research*, vol. 529, no. 1-2, pp. 16–22, 1990.
- [62] N. Lavoie, M. R. Peralta III, M. Chiasson et al., "Extracellular chelation of zinc does not affect hippocampal excitability and seizure-induced cell death in rats," *Journal of Physiology*, vol. 578, no. 1, pp. 275–289, 2007.
- [63] S. M. Elsas, S. Hazany, W. L. Gregory, and I. Mody, "Hippocampal zinc infusion delays the development of afterdischarges and seizures in a kindling model of epilepsy," *Epilepsia*, vol. 50, no. 4, pp. 870–879, 2009.
- [64] A. M. Baraka, W. Hassab El Nabi, and S. El Ghotni, "Investigating the role of zinc in a rat model of epilepsy," *CNS Neuroscience & Therapeutics*, vol. 18, no. 4, pp. 327–333, 2012.